Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the SoftBank 814T/815T handset.

- To ensure proper usage, read this manual thoroughly before using the SoftBank 814T/815T handset.
- After reading this manual, retain it for later reference.
- If this manual is lost or damaged, contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).
- Accessible services may be limited because of contract conditions.

SoftBank 814T/815T handset is compatible with the 3G system.

Caution

- Unauthorized copying of any part of this manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this manual. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).

What's in the Box

814T

● Handset	Battery Pack (TSBAU1)	Battery Cover	• AC Charger (TSCS01)
● User Guide	• First Step Guide (Japanese only)	• Utility Software for 814T/815T (CD-ROM)*1*2	

815T

● Handset	Battery Pack (TSBAU1)	• Coordinate Panels (Bottom Panel)	• AC Charger (TSCS01)
● User Guide	• First Step Guide (Japanese only)	• Utility Software for 814T/815T (CD-RC	DM)*1*2
Coordinate Panels (Top Panel)*3	• Coordinate Panels (Inner Sheets)*3		

^{*1} Complimentary sample not available for purchase.

- For information about optional items, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).
- MicroSD™ memory card is not included in the 814T/815T packages. Purchase a microSD™ memory card to use memory card functions.
 - In this manual, microSD[™] memory card is referred to as "memory card."
 - Your handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB (as of May, 2007). There is no guarantee that all memory cards will work with your handset.

^{*2} Upgrades or updates of included utility software may become available on the SoftBank Website (www.softbank.jp) without prior notification. Please check for the newest versions of utility applications and download as required.

^{*3} Complimentary sample includes two Top Panels and one pair of Inner Sheets. For other variations, Coordinate Panels are also available for purchase.

MEMO

Contents

What's in the Box il About This Manual vi Safety Precautions viii
General Notes · · · · · · · xx
Trademarks and Patents · · · · · · xxvi
SARxxix
1 Getting Started
USIM Card
Handsot Parts & Functions
Battery & Charger · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 1-12
Battery & Charger
Turning Handset Power On/Off · · · · · · · · · 1-17
Accessing Functions from Main Menu 1-18
Codes 1-22
2 Basic Operations
Making a Call2-2
2 Basic Operations Making a Call 2-2 Answering a Call 2-4
When You Cannot Answer Immediately
When You Cannot Answer Immediately
When You Cannot Answer Immediately 2-5 Rejecting a Call 2-6 Engaged Call Operations 2-7 Call Log 2-8
When You Cannot Answer Immediately 2-5 Rejecting a Call 2-6 Engaged Call Operations 2-7 Call Log 2-8 Owner Information 2-11
When You Cannot Answer Immediately 2-5 Rejecting a Call 2-6 Engaged Call Operations 2-7 Call Log 2-8 Owner Information 2-11 Setting / Canceling Manner Mode 2-11
When You Cannot Answer Immediately 2-5 Rejecting a Call 2-6 Engaged Call Operations 2-7 Call Log 2-8 Owner Information 2-11 Setting/ Canceling Manner Mode 2-11 Setting/ Canceling Offline Mode 2-12 About Emergency Calls 2-12
When You Cannot Answer Immediately 2-5 Rejecting a Call 2-6 Engaged Call Operations 2-7 Call Log 2-8 Owner Information 2-11
When You Cannot Answer Immediately 2-5 Rejecting a Call 2-6 Engaged Call Operations 2-7 Call Log 2-8 Owner Information 2-11 Setting/Canceling Manner Mode 2-11 Setting/Canceling Offline Mode 2-12 About Emergency Calls 2-12 Emergency Call Location Notification 2-13
When You Cannot Answer Immediately 2-5 Rejecting a Call 2-6 Engaged Call Operations 2-7 Call Log 2-8 Owner Information 2-11 Setting/Canceling Manner Mode 2-11 Setting/Canceling Offline Mode 2-12 About Emergency Calls 2-12 Emergency Call Location Notification 2-13
When You Cannot Answer Immediately 2-5 Rejecting a Call 2-6 Engaged Call Operations 2-7 Call Log 2-8 Owner Information 2-11 Setting/Canceling Manner Mode 2-11 Setting/Canceling Offline Mode 2-12 About Emergency Calls 2-12 Emergency Call Location Notification 2-13 3 Text Entry 3-2 Entering Characters 3-4
When You Cannot Answer Immediately 2-5
When You Cannot Answer Immediately 2-5 Rejecting a Call 2-6 Engaged Call Operations 2-7 Call Log 2-8 Owner Information 2-11 Setting/Canceling Manner Mode 2-11 Setting/Canceling Offline Mode 2-12 About Emergency Calls 2-12 Emergency Call Location Notification 2-13 3 Text Entry 3-2 Entering Characters 3-4

4 Phone Book
Saving to Phone Book · · · · · · 4-2 Setting Groups · · · · · 4-7
Using Phone Book 4-7
Editing Phone Book Entries · · · · · · · · 4-11 Owner Information · · · · · · · · 4-11
Owner Information · · · · · · 4-11
Using Speed Calling to Make Calls · · · · · 4-12 Setting Phone Book · · · · · · · 4-13
S! Address Book · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
5 Video Call
About Video Calls 5-2 Making a Video Call 5-2
Answering a Video Call
Engaged Video Call Operations5-3 Video Call Settings5-5
6 Camera About the Camera · · · · · · 6-2
Pictures
Functions for Taking Pictures · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 6-9
Videos
Functions for Recording Videos 6-13 OR Code 6-13
QR Code 6-15 Camera & Video Settings 6-15 Preview Setting 6-21 Send Functions 6-22 Editing a Picture 6-22
Preview Setting · · · · · 6-21
Send Functions
Zamalia Planna
7 Media Player About Media Player 7-2 Playing Music & Videos 7-3 Using Playlists 7-5
Playing Music & Videos
Using Playlists · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Accessing Recently Played Files
Downloading Music and Video Files
Streaming
Music Player · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
8 Memory Card
About Memory Card · · · · · · 8-2
Using a Memory Card · · · · · · · · · · · · 8-3

9 Data Folder
9 Data Folder Data Folder 9-2 Using Files & Folders 9-4 Using Picture Files 9-10 Using Melody, Music/Videos/Flash® Files 9-10 Using Welodieco files 815T 9-11 Using vObjects 9-11 Editing Files & Folders 9-12
10 File Transfer
Infrared 10-2 Using Infrared 10-2 Using USB 10-5
11 Settings
Sound Settings 11-2 Display Settings 11-6 Key Setting 11-12 Sub Menu View Setting 11-13 Answer Type Settings 11-13 Rejecting Incoming Calls 11-14 Caller ID Setting 11-15 Memory Settings 11-16 External Device Settings 11-16 Network Settings 11-16 Location 11-16
12 Security Settings
12 Security Settings Changing the Security Code 12-2 Setting PINs 12-2 Password Lock 12-3 Function Lock 12-4 Biometrics 12-5 Setting Secret Mode 12-6 IP Service Setting 12-7 Respad Lock 12-7 Reset Settings 12-8 Restricted Mode 12-9
13 Convenient Functions
Active Window

Simple Mode 13-8 Alarms 13-16 Answering Machine 13-19 Notepad 13-19 Calculator 13-20 Dictionary 13-20 Calendar 13-21 Tasks 13-30 Time Table 13-33 Kitchen Timer 13-35 Voice Recorder 13-35 Number Memo 13-36 World Clock 13-37 My Locations 13-38 Location Navi 13-39 Backup 13-39 Backing up Function Settings 13-42 Using International Call Service 13-43 Shortcut Menu 13-44 Sending Touch Tones 13-45 Using the Stereo Earphone (optional) 13-46
14 Optional Services Optional Services 14-2 Call Forward 14-3 Voice Mail 14-5 Call Waiting 14-6 Multiparty Call 14-7 Call Barring 14-8 15 Messaging 15-2 Customizing Handset Address 15-3 Incoming Messages 15-3
Incoming Messages 15-3 Checking Received Messages 15-4 Creating & Sending an SI Mail 15-5 Creating & Sending an SMS Message 15-10 Drafts 15-11 Message Box 15-12 Server Mail Operations 15-20 Message Settings 15-22

16 Internet Getting Started 16-2 Viewing and Using Websites 16-3 Accessing Yahoo! Keitai 16-4 Accessing PC Websites 16-5 Saved Pages 16-5 Bookmarks 16-6 Setting Browser Security 16-8 Operations for Web Pages 16-8	Checking IC Card Information Disabling S! FeliCa Disabling S! FeliCa from a Remote Location Configuring the External Startup Setting Setting the Display Balance 21 Appendix Default Settings Troubleshooting Updating Software
Browser Settings	Pictograph List · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
17 S! Appli Getting Started	Melody List Storage Capacity Specifications Glossary Index Warranty & After Sales Service Customer Service
18 Communications S! Town (Japanese Only) 18-2 S! Loop (Japanese Only) 18-2 Hot Status 18-3 Circle Talk Basics 18-12 Making a Circle Talk Call 18-13 Answering a Circle Talk Call 18-14 Circle Talk Operations 18-14 Circle Talk Members List 18-15	
19 Entertainment S! Cast (Japanese Only) 19-2 Reading Electronic Books (Japanese Only) 19-5 Ku-man's Room (Japanese Only) 19-5	
20 S! FeliCa About S! FeliCa 20-2 Using S! FeliCa 20-3	

	Checking IC Card Information 20-4 Disabling S! FeliCa 20-5 Disabling S! FeliCa from a Remote Location 20-5 Configuring the External Startup Setting 20-8 Setting the Display Balance 20-8
16-5	21 Appendix
16-6	Default Settings · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
16-8	Troubleshooting · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
16-8	Updating Software · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 21-12
· · · · · · · · · · · 16-12	Pictograph List · · · · · · · 21-14
· · · · · · · · · · · 16-16	Arrange-picture List · · · · · · · · · · · · 21-15
	Melody List · · · · · · 21-16
47.0	Storage Capacity · · · · · · 21-16
17-2	Specifications · · · · · · 21-17
17-3	Glossary · · · · · · · 21-19
17-3	Index · · · · · · · · 21-20
Appli · · · · · · · · · 17-3	Warranty & After Sales Service · · · · · · · · · 21-35
17-4	Customer Service · · · · · · 21-36

About This Manual

Please note, 814T and 815T are referred to as "handset" in this manual.

Symbols

- " > " navigates you to the next menu.
- "

 " navigates you to the next action/item.
- is used to confirm your selection.

Some operations are not fully explained in this manual.

About 815T

815T appears for explanations exclusive to 815T. Functions indicated by 815T are unavailable on 814T and any sub-menu selections, function settings or key operations are unavailable.

815T Exclusive to 815T

These features are available only on 815T:

- Coordinate Panels (page 1-15)
- Twinkle Light (page 11-11)
- Keitaideco (page 13-7)

Screenshots

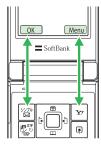
Screenshots used in this manual are provided for reference purposes and may differ in appearance from actual handset screens.

Keys

Key icons appearing in the text of this manual are those of the 814T.

Soft Keys

Use Soft Keys to perform operations indicated at the bottom of the Display.



- Press 🖾 to select OK.
- Press 🖅 to access Option menu.

Tip

- Soft Key operations vary by the current function.
- In this manual, Soft Key operations are described as below.
 - → 🖅 (Menu)

Navigation Key

The following notations are used to indicate Navigation Key operations.

Notation/Operation	Function
Press up	Opens Active Window* Increases volume Moves cursor up
Press down	Accesses Phone Book* Decreases volume Moves cursor down
Press left	Accesses Dialed* Moves cursor left
Press right	Accesses Received* Moves cursor right
Press center	Accesses Main menu Confirms the selected item or performs the selected operation Acts as the camera shutter-release

^{*} Functions accessible from Standby can be changed by modifying the Navigation Key settings (page 11-12).

Safety Precautions

- To ensure proper usage, be sure to read the Safety Precautions thoroughly before using your handset. Always keep this manual available for future reference.
- Be sure to follow the safety information contained in the instruction manuals and indicated on the product to prevent injury to the user and other persons, as well as damage to property.
- When a child uses the handset, it is recommended that a parent or guardian reads the instruction manuals thoroughly and provides proper instructions to the child.
- The following describes the meaning of safety symbols and signal words.
 Be sure to understand their meanings before proceeding to read this manual.

Pictograph Descriptions

Pictograph	Meaning
<u> </u>	Indicates an imminently hazardous operation that could result in death or serious injury ¹ of the user.
Warning	Indicates a potentially hazardous operation that could result in death or serious injury ¹ of the user.
<u></u> Caution	Indicates a potentially hazardous operation that could result in minor or moderate injury ² to the user or damage to property ³ .

- 1 Serious injury includes loss of sight, wounds, high temperature burns, low temperature burns (burns causing reddish areas, blistering and other damage to the skin as a result of heat exceeding the body temperature contacting your skin for a prolonged time), electric shock, fractures and poisoning requiring hospitalization or long-term medical treatment.
- 2 Injury includes wounds, burns and electric shock not requiring hospitalization or long-term medical treatment.
- 3 Damage to property includes extensive damage to homes and household property, as well as livestock and pets.

Symbol Descriptions

Symbol	Meaning
Prohibited	indicates a prohibited action. The prohibited action is indicated graphically or described in text in or near the symbol.
Compulsory	① indicates a compulsory action that must be carried out. The compulsory action is indicated graphically or described in text in or near the symbol.

Limitation of Liability

- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from natural disasters such as earthquakes, lightning, storms and floods, as well as fires through no fault of SoftBank and Toshiba, acts by third parties, other accidents, improper use by the user, whether intentionally or negligently, or use under other abnormal conditions.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for incidental damages arising out of the use or inability to use the product, including, but not limited to, corruption or loss of data, lost business revenue or suspension of business operations.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from improper use not conforming to the instructions in the instruction manuals.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from malfunctions caused by use in combination with connection equipment or software that is not authorized for use by SoftBank and Toshiba.
- Image data recorded with the camera, downloaded data and other data may be corrupted or lost due to malfunction, repair or other improper handling of the product. SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for the restoration of corrupted or lost data, as well as any damages or lost revenue and profits.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for corruption or loss of stored data resulting from failures or malfunctions of the product, regardless of the cause. Be sure to keep a separate memo of important data to limit damage caused by data corruption or loss to a minimum.

A Danger



Do not disassemble, modify or repair the handset, battery pack, charger or Stereo Earphone

No disassembly Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock, injury or malfunction. Modification of the handset is prohibited by Japanese Radio Law. For repair, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 21-36).



Do not dispose of the handset, battery pack, charger or Stereo Earphone in a fire or expose it to heat
§ If the handset, battery pack, charger or Stereo Earphone is exposed to water, do not dry it artificially in heating equipment (microwave oven, etc.)

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



Do not charge, use or leave the handset, battery pack, charger or Stereo Earphone in hot places such as near a fire or heater

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.

⚠ Danger



Do not expose the handset, battery pack, charger or Stereo Earphone to fluids such as water, perspiration or Keep water seawater

> Do not leave the handset, battery pack, charger or Stereo Earphone outdoors in a bathroom or wherever water or any other fluid is used

Do not place the handset, battery pack, charger or Stereo Earphone near cups, vases or other containers of fluids

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock or malfunction. If the handset is dropped accidentally in water or any other fluid, immediately turn off the handset and remove the battery pack. If the handset, battery pack or charger is exposed to fluids such as water during charging, remove the power plug from the outlet immediately. Do not charge the battery pack while it is wet or damp. Contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 21-36).



Do not use excessive force when inserting the battery pack into the handset or connecting the handset to Prohibited the charger

Do not connect any cords with reverse polarity

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, rupture, overheat or catch fire, as well as cause electric shock or malfunction.



Do not touch the battery pack terminal (metal parts) with any metal objects (necklace, hairpin, etc.)

Prohibited Doing so may cause the battery pack to overheat, rupture or catch fire, as well as the metal object to overheat.



Do not use a battery pack other than one supplied with or designated for the handset

Compulsory Do not use the battery pack for any other handset Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



Do not use a charger other than one supplied with or designated for the handset to charge the battery pack Compulsory Do not use the charger for any other handset

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



If electrolyte fluid leaking from the battery pack comes into contact with your skin or clothes, wash it immediately with **Compulsory Clean water as this may hurt your body**

> And if it gets into your eyes, do not rub them, and have them immediately treated by an ophthalmologist after washing them with clean water

> If the fluid sticks to the equipment, wipe it out without touching it directly

> If the fluid is left as it is, your skin may get irritated or there may be fear of losing your sight.

Marning



Do not use the handset while driving Do not make or receive a call and do not use other functions (messaging, game, camera, video, music, Mobile Light, etc.)

Doing so may cause a traffic accident. Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law. Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking is permitted.



Be sure to turn off the handset before you approach to the place where flammable gas may exist or may Compulsory be produced

> Doing so may ignite the gases and start a fire. Turn off the handset and do not charge it wherever gases may be present (gas station, etc.). Be sure to turn off the handset before using S! FeliCa-compatible reader/writer within gas stations. (When the IC Card Lock is set, turn off the handset after unlocking the setting.)



Do not swing the handset by the strap, USB cable or Stereo Earphone

Doing so may cause an injury, accident or damage.



Turn off the handset while you are near any precision electronic equipment

Compulsory Radio waves may adversely affect the operation of electronic equipment. Examples of such equipment: medical electronic equipment such as cardiac pacemakers and hearing aids or fire alarms and automatic doors. If you use medical electronic equipment, consult with the equipment manufacturer or distributor about the influence of radio waves



Remove the power plug from the outlet if the AC Charger is not to be used for a long period of time or before cleaning

Failing to do so may cause an electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Turn off the handset wherever its use is prohibited such as on an aircraft

Failing to do so may adversely affect the operation of electronic equipment and cause an accident.

Use of the handset on an aircraft is prohibited by law.



Check your surroundings to confirm that it is safe to make/receive calls, send/receive messages, take Compulsory pictures or record videos

> Failing to do so may cause you to trip over or cause a traffic accident.

⚠ Warning



Do not use the handset with any power voltage other than the specified voltage

Compulsory Doing so may cause a fire. The power voltages are 100 to 240 V AC for the AC Charger and 12 or 24 V DC (for a negative ground car only) for the In-Car Charger.



Wipe away any dust on the plug of the AC Charger with a dry cloth after removing the plug from the

Dust on the plug or outlet may cause a fire.



Follow the instructions below when installing and wiring in-vehicle devices

- Compulsory Make sure that devices do not interfere with driving and safety equipment such as airbags
 - · Make sure that wires are not caught in seatbelt buckles, doors or other moving parts

Any wire caught around a foot, brake pedal, accelerator pedal, etc. may interfere with driving and cause a traffic accident. If any part of an in-vehicle device drops onto the floor, it may startle you into abrupt braking or steering, leading to a traffic accident.



When thunder is heard outside, stop using the handset immediately

Turn off the handset and do not touch it

Failing to do so may attract lightning and cause electric shock. When thunder is heard, stop using the handset and move to a safe place such as inside a building.



If the battery pack fails to charge in the specified time, stop charging immediately

Compulsory Failing to do so may cause overheating, rupturing or fire. Contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 21-36).



When inserting the AC Charger plug into an AC household outlet, make sure that a metal strap or any Compulsory other metal object does not touch the plug

Failing to do so may cause electric shock, short circuit or fire.

Marning



If something unusual happens to the handset, battery pack or charger; for example, it emits smoke or an Compulsory unusual odor or is damaged, perform the following steps immediately

- 1. If the battery pack is charging, unplug the AC Charger from the AC household outlet or unplug the In-Car Charger from the cigarette lighter socket.
- 2. Make sure that the handset is not hot, then turn it off and remove the battery pack.

Failing to do so and continuing use (charging) may cause the battery pack to overheat, rupture or catch fire or the handset to overheat. If something unusual happens, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 21-36).



Do not drop the handset or battery pack or subject it to excessive shock

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



Do not sit down with the handset in your trousers pocket

Excess weight may damage the Display, battery pack or other parts resulting in overheating, fire or injury.

If the handset is used near an implanted cardiac pacemaker, defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, radio waves may interfere with such a device or equipment

Observe the following guidelines

- 1. If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator, carry and use the handset at a distance of at least 22 centimeters away from the implanted device.
- 2. Turn off the handset in crowded places such as packed trains because a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator may be nearby. Radio waves can interfere with the operation of a cardiac pacemaker or other medical device.
- 3. Follow the precautions below in medical institutions.
 - · Do not bring the handset into an operating room, intensive care unit or coronary care unit.
 - · Turn off the handset in a hospital ward.
 - · Turn off the handset in a lobby or other location close to medical equipment.
 - · Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use the handset in or bring it into prohibited areas.

Marning

4. When using electronic medical devices other than an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator outside of medical institutions (such as at home), consult with the individual medical device manufacturer about the possible influence of radio waves. The above information conforms to "The Guidelines on Use of Mobile Phones and Other Devices to Prevent Electromagnetic Wave Interference with Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan), as well as refers to "The Investigative Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment" (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



Do not use the AC Charger with any power supply other than a 100 to 240 V AC household power supply

Prohibited Doing so may result in a fire, as well as cause the charger to overheat, catch fire or malfunction.

♠ Caution



Do not use or leave the handset or battery pack in places where it will be exposed to direct sunlight or in hot places such as inside a car in the sun

Doing so may cause overheating, fire or malfunction.



Keep the handset, battery pack, charger and Coordinate Panels away from infants and small children

Failing to do so may result in the battery pack or memory card being accidentally swallowed or cause an injury.



Do not use with Coordinate Panels detached Do not use if damaged

Prohibited May result in accident, damage, or malfunction.



Do not modify or repair Coordinate Panels

Proper functioning may no longer be guaranteed.



Make sure that the charger terminals (metal parts) do not come into contact with wires or other metal. **Prohibited** objects

Failing to do so may cause overheating or burns.



Do not pull the cord when unplugging the AC Charger or In-Car Charger from an AC household outlet or socket

Damage to the cord may cause electric shock, overheating or fire. Hold the plug when unplugging the AC Charger or In-Car Charger.



Do not pull, bend with excessive force or twist the cords of the AC Charger and In-Car Charger

Do not damage or modify them Do not place objects on them

Do not apply heat and keep them away from heaters Damage to a cord may cause electric shock, overheating or fire.



Do not plug or unplug the AC Charger with wet hands Doing so may cause electric shock or malfunction.

hands

Keep magnetic cards away from the handset and make sure that a magnetic card is not trapped when closing the handset

Failing to do so may cause the magnetic data on a cash card, credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.

⚠ Caution



Do not use the handset in a vehicle if it affects invehicle electronic devices

Use of the handset in some types of vehicles may, in some rare cases, affect in-vehicle electronic devices and interfere with safe driving.



Do not place the handset on an unstable or unlevel surface

Doing so may result in the handset falling and causing injury or malfunction. Be particularly careful when vibration is set.



Do not dispose of the used battery pack with ordinary garbage

Insulate the terminal with tape and then dispose of the used battery pack separately from ordinary garbage or take it to your nearest SoftBank Shop. Be sure to observe local regulations on the separate collection of used batteries, wherever applicable.



Do not touch the handset with sweaty hands or place it into a pocket of sweaty clothes

¹ Sweat and humidity may erode the internal components of the handset and cause overheating or malfunction.



Do not use the In-Car Charger when the car engine is not running

d Doing so may result in a flat battery.



If the fuse for the In-Car Charger blows, replace it with a designated fuse

Compulsory Replacing the fuse with other than a designated fuse may cause overheating and fire.

For details on replacing the fuse, refer to the instruction manual of the In-Car Charger.



If your skin becomes irritated, immediately stop using the handset and consult with a dermatologist

The following materials and surface treatments have been used for the handset. Some of these materials may cause itching, irritation, eczema, etc. in Compulsory some rare cases depending on the individual's constitution and physical condition.

P. of	Material (Surface Treatment)		
Part	814T	815T	
Outer housing (Main Display side, External Display side, Keypad side, hinge cover portion)	Titanium [metal] (cured acrylic coating)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)	
Outer housing (Keypad)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)*	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)	
Outer housing (Battery Cover)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)		
Screw Cover (lower side of Main Display)	Polyester resin (acrylic UV-hardened pressing)*	Polyester resin (acrylic UV-hardened pressing)	
Screw Cover (Main Camera side)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)		
Side Keys	PC resin (aluminum evaporation, acrylic UV-hardened coating)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)	
Main Display Panel, External Display	Tempered glass, Polyester film (acrylic UV-hardening)		
Center Key	Urethane UV cured resin	PC resin (aluminum evaporation, UV cured acrylic coating)	
Main Camera Panel , Mobile Light Panel	Acrylic resin (UV cured acrylic coating)	PC resin (tin evaporation, UV cured acrylic coating)	
Sub Camera Panel	Acrylic resin (UV cured acrylic coating)		
Keypad	Urethane UV cured resin	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)	
Speaker Hole Mesh, Infrared Port	Non-waven cloth, Acrylic resin		
Memory Card Slot Cap, Earphone Microphone Jack Cap, Cable and Handset Charging Terminal Cap	Elastomer/PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)*	Elastomer resin (UV cured acrylic coating)	
Charging Indicator, External Light	PC resin (aluminum evaporation, acrylic UV-hardened coating)	PC resin (aluminum evaporation, UV cured acrylic coating)	
Twinkle Light		PC resin	
Screws	Steel (nickel coating, copper undercoat)		
Coordinate panel, Coordinate panel(underside)		Acrylic resin (UV cured acrylic coating), PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)	
Inner Sheet		Polyester/Elastomer resin	

^{*} Titanium silver, light blue, and rose pink for the 814T have a tin plating undercoat

↑ Caution



Before using the handset, make sure that no metal objects (such as pins) are stuck to the Earpiece or Compulsory Stereo Speakers

> Failing to do so may result in a metal object causing an ear or hand injury, etc.



If you have a weak heart, be careful with the call vibration and ringtone volume settings

Compulsory Failing to do so may startle you and may be harmful to your heart.



Do not use the Mobile Light for purposes other than taking pictures, recording videos or lighting Do not use Twinkle Light for any other purpose than intended

Doing so may harm the eyes and cause impaired vision or other injury.



Make sure things like paper, cloth and bedding are not placed on the handset during charging using a USB connection, In-Car Charger, AC Charger, etc.

Failing to do so may cause overheating, fire, burns or malfunction.



Do not turn the volume up too high while using Stereo **Earphone**

Do not use Stereo Earphone continuously for long periods of time

> Exposure to high sound levels may impair hearing and prolonged use may cause hearing defect regardless of the volume level. Sound leakage may annoy other people and surrounding sounds may not be heard clearly resulting in an accident.



Do not insert objects other than the memory card into the Memory Card Slot

Doing so may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunction. Cover the slot with the cap at times other than when you are inserting or removing the memory card.



Keep your face away from the Memory Card Slot when inserting or removing the memory card Keep the memory card out of the reach of small children

If the memory card is let go of suddenly, it may fly out and hit your face resulting in injury.

⚠ Caution



Do not subject the memory card to vibration or shock or remove it from the slot or turn off the handset while data is being written to or read from the memory card

Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.



Use only the memory card supported by the handset Failing to do so may cause data loss or malfunction.

Prohibited The handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB (as of May, 2007).



Do not allow children to use cables (Stereo Earphone or USB cables) unsupervised and keep cables out of infants' reach

Accidents or injuries may result (if cable is accidentally wrapped around the neck).



Do not point the infrared beam at anyone's eye during infrared communication

ited Doing so may cause eye damage.



Do not use the Mobile Light or Twinkle Light close to eyes

Doing so may cause eye damage. Be especially careful not to take pictures or record videos with the Mobile Light too close to the eyes of infants.



Do not use excessive force when inserting or removing the USIM card

Prohibited

ed Doing so may cause a malfunction. Be careful not to injure a hand or finger when removing the card.



Use only a USIM card designated for the handset

Failing to do so may cause data loss or malfunction.



Do not remove polyester film from Main Display and External Display

Prohibited

Removing the shatter-proof film may cause tempered glass (Main/ External Display) to shatter, resulting in injuries.



Be careful not to trap your fingers or objects when closing the handset and not to trap your fingers in the hinge when opening the handset

Failing to do so may cause injury or damage to the LCD Display.

General Notes

Using Your Handset

- The handset employs radio waves. Signals may be disrupted even within service areas if you are indoors, underground, inside a tunnel or inside a vehicle. If you move to a location with poor signal reception, a call may be suddenly cut off.
- When using the handset in public places, take care not to annoy other people around you. Use of the handset is prohibited in some public places such as in theaters or on buses and trains.
- The handset is a radio transceiver under Japanese Radio Law. You may be requested to submit the handset for inspection based on this law.
- Use of the handset near a landline phone, TV or radio may affect the image and sound quality of the equipment.
- The handset employs a digital system to maintain a high level of communication quality even at very low signal levels. However, calls may be suddenly cut off when the signal strength becomes too weak.
- The digital system provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the
 possibility of someone eavesdropping on your conversation cannot be
 ruled out as long as radio waves are used.
- The handset is exclusively for use in Japan. It cannot be used outside Japan.
- Data stored on the handset may be corrupted or lost on the following occasions.
 - · The handset is used improperly.
 - The handset is exposed to static electricity or electric noise.
 - · The handset is turned off during operation.
 - · The battery pack is completely discharged.
 - · The handset malfunctions or is sent for repairs.

- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for the corruption or loss of stored data. Be sure to keep a separate memo of important data to limit damage caused by data corruption or loss to a minimum.
- Be sure to charge the battery pack before using the handset for the first time or if the handset has not been used for a long time. When the battery pack is stored for a long time, it discharges over time even if it is not used.
- Before using a memory card, read the instruction manual of the memory card thoroughly to ensure safe and proper operation.
- When the handset is used for extended periods of time, especially in high temperature conditions, the handset surface could become hot. Please use caution when touching the handset under such conditions.
- When certain items are taken out of the country, documentation may be required to certify that the export of the items is not controlled, prohibited, or restricted by the Export Trade Control Order and Foreign Exchange Order. Basically, no such documentation is required if you take the handset out of the country and bring it back for the purpose of personal use when going on vacations or short business trips. In some cases, however, an export permit may be required if the handset is to be used by or transferred to anyone else.
 - Furthermore, a US government export permit may be required when taking the handset to countries for which the US government has imposed export restrictions (Cuba, Libya, North Korea, Iran, Sudan, Syria).

 For details on export laws, regulations and procedures, refer to the Web page of the Security Export Control Policy Division of the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry.
- If you have hearing aids, use of the handset may interfere with some operations of the hearing aids. If there is any interference, consult with the manufacturer or distributor of the hearing aids.

Inside Vehicles

- Do not use the handset while driving. Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law.
- Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking or stopping is permitted.

Aboard Aircraft

 Do not use the handset on an aircraft. Do not turn the handset back on while you are on the aircraft. Use of the handset on an aircraft is prohibited by law.

Handling Basics

- Do not use the handset in extreme temperatures, direct sunlight and humid or dusty places.
- Do not drop the handset or subject it to excessive shock.
- Performance cannot be guaranteed if used with the Coordinate panels removed.
- To clean the handset, wipe it with a dry soft cloth. Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or other solvents. Doing so may cause discoloration and remove the printed logo.
- Avoid exposing the handset to rain, snow or high humidity. The handset, battery pack, charger or Stereo Earphone and other optional accessories are not waterproof.
- Do not remove the battery pack while handset power is on to avoid malfunction.
- If the battery pack has been removed from the handset or the handset has not been charged for a long time, stored data and settings may be lost or altered. SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damage or loss resulting from such negligence.

- The battery pack is a consumable item employing lithium ions. Replace the battery pack with a new one if the operation time becomes extremely short after it is fully charged. Buy a new battery pack designated for the handset.
- Do not dispose of a used battery pack after battery pack replacement or discontinued use of the handset with municipal waste. Insulate the terminal with tape or place the battery pack into a plastic bag and then take it to your nearest SoftBank Shop or battery pack recycling cooperative store. Be sure to observe local regulations on the separate collection of used batteries, wherever applicable.



- Some handset display pixels may be missing or remain lit. This is not a
 defect or malfunction. If the Display is left on for a long period of time,
 pictures may be permanently burned into it.
- Make sure the Stereo Earphone is securely plugged into Earphone Microphone Jack. Failing to do so may generate noise on the other party's phone during calls.
- Do not turn the volume up too high while using Stereo Earphone. Exposure
 to high sound levels may impair hearing and prolonged use may cause
 hearing damage regardless of the volume level. Sound leakage may annoy
 other people and surrounding sounds may not be heard clearly when
 walking, resulting in an accident.
- When Earphone Microphone Jack/External Device Port are not in use, make sure to replace the caps. Otherwise dust or water may enter the handset causing handset malfunction.
- Hold the plug and do not pull the cord when unplugging Stereo Earphone.
 Pulling the cord may cause damage or malfunction.

- The communication antenna of the handset is built into the body and does
 not protrude. Signal sensitivity may be reduced if you touch or cover the
 portion of the body containing the internal antenna (page 1-7). In
 particular, do not affix things like stickers onto this portion of the body.
 Doing so may prevent you from making/receiving calls, sending/receiving
 messages or accessing Web.
- When you replace the handset or send it for repair, messages and other data stored in the handset cannot be transferred to another handset.
- Do not drop the USIM card or subject it to excessive shock. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not bend the USIM card or place a heavy object on it. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not allow the USIM card to get wet or leave it in places of high humidity. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not use or leave the USIM card in hot places such as near a fire or heater. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Avoid storing the USIM card in direct sunlight or hot and humid places.
 Failing to do so may cause a malfunction.
- Keep the USIM card out of infants' reach. Failing to do so may result in the USIM card being accidentally swallowed or cause an injury.
- Before using the USIM card, read the instruction manual of the USIM card thoroughly to ensure safe and proper operation.

Functional Limitations

- After handset upgrade or subscription cancellation, the following functions become unavailable on handset:
 - Camera
 - · Media Player
 - S! Appli
- Above functions may become unavailable after long periods of handset disuse. Contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).

Mobile Camera

- Be sure to observe proper etiquette when using the camera.
- Do not expose the camera lens to direct sunlight. Concentrated sunlight through the lens may cause the handset to malfunction.
- Be sure to try taking and previewing pictures before using the camera on important occasions like wedding ceremonies.
- Do not commercially use or transfer pictures taken with the camera without the permission of the copyright holder (photographer), except for personal use.
- Do not use the camera in locations where taking photos and recording videos are prohibited.

Mobile Light, External Light and Twinkle Light

- Do not use the Mobile Light or Twinkle Light in hot, cold or humid places.
 Doing so may shorten its life.
- The Mobile Light, External Light and Twinkle Light have a limited life.
 Repeated use will decrease the light intensity.

About the speaker

 Be cautious of hearing damage. The speaker is close to the earpiece.
 High-volume sound from speaker may damage your ear during playback or a call. Hold handset away from your ear.

Copyrights

Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Making copies (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copies for purposes other than stated above without proper authorization constitutes an infringement of copyrights and moral rights, potentially resulting in claims for reparations or criminal punishment. If you use the handset to make copies, observe the copyright laws. Furthermore, recording materials using the camera is also subject to the same laws.

Right of Portrait

Portrait right is the right of an individual to refuse to be photographed by others and protects from the unauthorized publication or use of an individual's photograph by others. Right of personality is a portrait right applicable to all citizens and right of publicity is a portrait right (property right) designed to protect celebrities' interests. Be careful when taking pictures with the handset camera. Photographing, publicizing and distributing photographs of citizens and celebrities without permission are illegal.

TOSHIBA CORPORATION

IMPORTANT NOTE: PLEASE READ BEFORE USING YOUR HANDSET

BY ATTEMPTING TO USE ANY SOFTWARE ON THE SUPPLIED HANDSET THIS CONSTITUTES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THESE EULA TERMS. IF YOU REJECT OR DO NOT AGREE WITH ALL THE TERMS OF THIS EULA, PLEASE DO NOT ATTEMPT TO ACCESS OR USE THE SUPPLIED SOFTWARE.

End User License Agreement

This End User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement between you (as the user) and TOSHIBA CORPORATION ("Toshiba") with regard to the copyrighted software as installed in a Toshiba 3G handset supplied to you (the "Handset").

Use or disposal of any software installed in the Handset and related documentations (the "Software") will constitute your acceptance of these terms, unless separate terms are provided by the Software supplier on the Handset, in which case certain additional or different terms may apply. If you do not agree with the terms of this EULA, do not use or dispose the Software.

1. <u>License Grant</u>. Toshiba grants to you a personal, non-transferable and non-exclusive right to use the Software as set out in this EULA. Modifying, adapting, translating, renting, copying, making available, transferring or assigning all or part of the Software, or any rights granted hereunder, to any other persons and removing any proprietary notices, labels or marks from the Software is strictly prohibited, except as expressly permitted in this EULA. Furthermore, you hereby agree not to create derivative works based on the Software.

- 2. Copyright. The Software is licensed, not sold. You acknowledge that no title to the intellectual property in the Software is or will be transferred to you. You further acknowledge that title and full ownership rights to the Software will remain the exclusive property of Toshiba, Toshiba's affiliates, and/or their suppliers, and you will not acquire any rights to the Software, except as expressly set out in this EULA. You may keep a back-up copy of the Software only so far as necessary for its lawful use. All copies of the Software must contain the same proprietary notices as contained in or on the Software and are subject to the terms of this EULA. All rights not expressly granted under this EULA are reserved to Toshiba, Toshiba's affiliates and/or their suppliers.
- 3. Reverse Engineering. You agree that you will not attempt, and if you are a business organization, you will use your best efforts to prevent your employees, servants and contractors from attempting to reverse engineer, decompile, modify, translate or disassemble the Software in whole or in part except to the extent that such actions cannot be excluded by mandatory applicable law and only if those actions are taken in accordance with such applicable law. Any failure to comply with the above or any other terms and conditions contained herein will result in the automatic termination of this license and the reversion of the rights granted hereunder to Toshiba.
- 4. <u>DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY</u>. The Software is provided "AS IS" without warranty of any kind. TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES, AND THEIR SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS OR OTHER TERMS (WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED), INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS AND TERMS OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE

- AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS; AND THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE IS WITH YOU. YOU ACCEPT THAT SOFTWARE MAY NOT MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS AND NO WARRANTY CAN BE GIVEN THAT OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE.
- 5. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT LEGALLY PERMITTED, IN NO EVENT SHALL TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES OR THEIR SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY DAMAGES FOR (A) LOST BUSINESS OR REVENUE, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS DATA; OR (B) CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR INDIRECT DAMAGES OF ANY KIND (WHETHER UNDER CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) ARISING OUT OF: (I) THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES OR THEIR SUPPLIER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES; OR (II) ANY CLAIM BY A THIRD PARTY. SAVE AS SET OUT IN THIS SECTION, TOSHIBA'S ENTIRE LIABILITY UNDER THIS EULA SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PRICE PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE, IF ANY.

PLEASE MAKE AND RETAIN A COPY OF ALL DATA YOU HAVE INSERTED INTO YOUR PRODUCT, FOR EXAMPLE NAMES, ADDRESSES, PHONE NUMBERS, PICTURES, RINGTONES ETC, BEFORE SUBMITTING YOUR PRODUCT FOR A WARRANTY SERVICE, AS SUCH DATA MAY BE DELETED OR FRASED AS PART OF THE REPAIR OR SERVICE PROCESS.

- <u>Laws</u>. This EULA will be governed by the laws of Japan. All disputes
 arising out of this EULA shall be subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of
 the Tokyo District Court.
- 7. Export Laws. Any use, duplication or disposal of the Software involves products and/or technical data that may be controlled under the export laws of applicable countries or region and may be subject to the approval of the applicable governmental authorities prior to export. Any export, directly or indirectly, in contravention of the export laws of applicable countries or region is prohibited.
- 8. <u>Third Party Beneficiary</u>. You agree that certain suppliers of the Software to Toshiba have a right as a third party beneficiary to enforce the terms of this EULA against you as a user.

Trademarks and Patents

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

Titled States Faterits and/or	their counterparts in c	tilei liations.
4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390
5,535,239	5,267,262	5,600,754
5,416,797	5,778,338	5,490,165
5,101,501	5,511,073	5,267,261
5,568,483	5,414,796	5,659,569
5,056,109	5,506,865	5,228,054
5,544,196	5,337,338	5,657,420
5,710,784		



Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



microSD[™] is a trademark of the SD Card Association.

Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ Mascot Capsule® is a registered trademark of HI Corporation © 2002-2003 HI Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG-LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.



T9 Text Input is covered by Japan Pat.No. 特許 3532780,3492981 and other patents pending.

Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full® is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

Copyright © 1998-2003 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com) All rights reserved

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT AND/OR BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES. INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT, ERIC YOUNG OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

QR Code is a registered trademark of Denso wave Incorporated.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a trademark of Sony Corporation.

a is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.



Edy is a brand name of the prepaid-type electronic money service **Edy** managed by bitWallet, Inc.

S! Mail, S! Appli, S! CAST, S! Address Book, Hot Status, Circle Talk, PC Site Browser, Movie Sha-mail, Navi appli, Live Monitor, S! Town, S! Loop, Feeling Mail, Location Navi and Lifestyle-Appli are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Copyright © 1995-2006 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

BookSurfing is a registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY, Inc.

"SOFTBANK" SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.

814T/815T is equipped with the NetFront Browser, NetFront Messaging Client, and NetFront IMS Client applications from ACCESS Co., Ltd pre-installed for Internet browsing and other tasks.

ACŒESS™ **NetFront**®

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.



This product uses OKAO[™] Vision of OMRON Corporation.

"OKAO" and "OKAO Vision" are registered trademarks of OMRON Corporation in Japan.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo!/Y! logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

All other company names and trademarks are the property of their respective owners

SAR

The 814T and 815T mobile phones comply with the relevant technical standards relating to the absorption of radio frequency (RF) energy as stipulated by the Japanese government.

These technical standards, based upon scientific evidence, were established to ensure that RF energy from wireless mobile devices used near the head do not have a serious effect on human health. The maximum Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which measures the average radio wave energy absorbed by the human head, set by the Japanese government is 2 W/kg*. This allowed value includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value corresponds with the international guidelines prescribed by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with the World Health Organization (WHO).

Mobile phones must comply with Japan's technical standards under the Radio Law. 814T and 815T have been approved under Japan's Radio Law. The SAR values are 0.309 W/kg for the 814T and 0.318 W/kg for the 815T. The value conforms with the guidelines set by the Japanese government and is the maximum measured value of the transmission power of this phone. Depending on the product, there may be minute differences in the SAR. However, they are within the allowed limits. During calling, the actual SAR is lower as the phone is designed to use the minimum transmission power necessary to communicate with the mobile network.

Additional information about SAR can be found at the website listed right.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications website: http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB) website: http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html
SoftBank website:

http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/corporate/legal/emf/emf03.html Toshiba website:

http://www.toshiba.co.jp/product/etsg/cmt/

* The technical guidelines are stipulated in the Ministerial Ordinance Related to the Radio Law (Wireless Equipment Regulations, Article 14-2).

About SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

- 6 Body SAR: Refers to the SAR of the maximum transmission power when continuously calling with the handset attached to the body and using an earohone.
- ** Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): Measured value of continuous calling at 6 minute intervals.
 - Our technical standards for body SAR include the U.S. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) standards and information from Europe. For more information see the sections on "FCC RF Exposure Information" and "European RF Exposure Information."
- *** Placement on the body: Measurements were taken with the rear of the phone facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the normal position of the handset. In order to maintain compliance with radio frequency (RF) exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the body and the back of the handset. Choose accessories, such as belt clips and holsters, that do not contain metallic components.

FCC RF Exposure Information

The guidelines established by the FCC are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/ka.

Tests performed in accordance with FCC standards for each model show that the SAR readings for these handsets, when used next to the body as described in this user guide, are 0.879 W/kg for the 814T and 0.914 W/kg for the 815T

Placement on the body: The 814T and 815T were tested in the normal mode of use for mobile phones, held with the rear of the handset facing towards the body at a distance of 1.5 cm.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the homepage listed below:

Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website: http://www.phonefacts.net

European RF Exposure Information

The 814T and 815T mobile phones are radio transceivers. It is designed not to exceed limits recommended by international guidelines for exposure to radio waves. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The maximum permitted SAR value for a mobile phone is 2 W/kg. The maximum SAR values for the 814T and 815T when used next to the body are 0.519 W/kg* and 0.563 W/kg* respectively.

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device during operation is typically below that indicated above. This is because the handset was designed to use the minimum level of transmission power necessary to communicate with the mobile network. The World Health Organization (WHO) has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a "hands-free" device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body. Additional information about SAR can be found at the WHO homepage listed below. http://www.who.int/emf

* These tests for wearing the mobile device on the body are carried out in accordance with FCC standards and the values are based on European requirements.

USIM Card	1-3
About the USIM Card	1-3
Inserting & Removing the USIM Card	1-4
USIM PINs	1-5
PIN	1-5
PIN2	1-5
PIN Lock & PUK Codes	1-5
Handset Parts & Functions	
Handset Parts & Functions	1-6
Display Indicators	1-8
External Display Indicators	1-10
Information Prompt	1-10
Battery & Charger	
Getting Started	1-12
Inserting & Removing the Battery Pack	1-13
Charging with the AC Charger	1-14
Charging with the In-Car Charger (Optional)	1-14
Charging with the In-Car Charger (Optional) Coordinate Panels 815T	1-15
Changing Top Panel	1-15
Attaching Inner Sheets	1-16
Turning Handset Power On/Off	
Retrieving Network Information	1-17
Date & Time	1-18
Accessing Functions from Main Menu	
Main Menu View	1-21
Customize Main Menu	1-21
Select Menu Items Using Keypad	1-22
Codes	
Security Code	1-22
Center Access Code	1-22
Call Barring Service Code	1-22
Internet Security Code	1-22

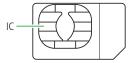
MEMO

USIM Card

The USIM card is an IC card that stores customer information such as your phone number. Insert USIM card in USIM card compatible SoftBank handsets only.

About the USIM Card

- If the USIM card is not inserted, the handset cannot be used.
- Save Phone Book entries and SMS messages on USIM card (pages 4-13, 15-14).
- Insert into compatible SoftBank handsets to access files.
- Do not insert USIM cards into any other IC card device. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM card IC chip clean.
- Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM cards. Malfunction may result.
- For details on the USIM card, refer to the instruction manual provided with the USIM card.



Important

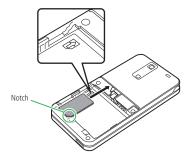
- USIM cards are the property of SoftBank.
- USIM cards will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM cards to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM cards are recycled.
- USIM card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Backup USIM card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM card or handset (with USIM card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).

Inserting & Removing the USIM Card

 Before inserting or removing the USIM card, turn off the handset and remove the battery pack.

Inserting

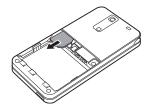
- 1 Slide USIM with IC chip (page 1-3) facing down
 - Line up the notch on the USIM card with the inlet opening.



2 Push the USIM card all the way in

Removing

1 Pull out USIM straight



Note

- · Avoid touching or scratching the USIM card's IC.
- Do not force the USIM card into or out of the handset; damage may result.
- Take care not to lose the USIM card after removing it from the handset.

Tip

Some Chaku-Uta[®]/Chaku-Uta Full[®], melody, movie, S! Appli, Lifestyle-Appli or book files in your handset or memory card may be inaccessible after repairing or replacing the handset, terminating the subscription, or replacing the USIM card. Preinstalled S! Appli, S! Town and BookSurfing applications may become unavailable if a different USIM card is inserted.

USIM PINs

For security, the USIM card has two security codes: PIN and PIN2. Do not forget these codes and do not reveal them to others.

PIN

This is a four to eight digit security code to prevent others from using your handset. When *PIN Settings* (page 12-2) is set to *ON*, PIN is required each time the handset is turned on. The default setting is "9999". PIN can be changed (page 12-2).

PIN2

This is the four to eight digit security code required for operations such as resetting Call Time&Cost and setting Fixed Dial #. The default setting is "9999". PIN2 can be changed (page 12-2).

PIN Lock & PUK Codes

PIN lock is set when an incorrect PIN or PIN2 is entered three times consecutively. PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) codes are required to cancel PIN lock/PIN2 lock. To obtain PUK/PUK2, contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).

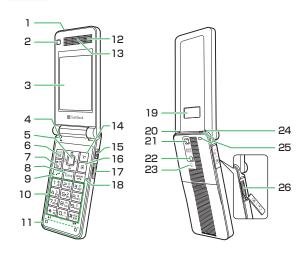
Note

 If PUK/PUK2 is incorrectly entered ten consecutive times, USIM card is locked. USIM card lock cannot be canceled. Contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).

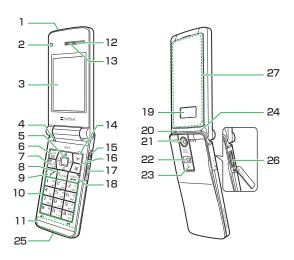
Handset Parts & Functions

Handset





815T



- 1. Infrared Port: Use for infrared transmissions (page 10-2).
- 2. Sub Camera: Used for video call, etc.
- 3. Display
- 4. Microphone
- 5. Navigation Key Move cursor up, down, left or right, access functions assigned to the Navigation Key (page 11-12), etc.
 Center Key Access the Main menu from standby. Use this key to confirm selected items and perform selected operations.
- Left Soft Key : Access the Messaging menu from standby. Also, from standby, press and hold to switch to Simple Mode (page 13-8).
- Media Player Key
 Access Media Player (Audio menu) from standby or use to make/answer video calls.
- Clear/Memo Key previous: Delete characters and return to the previous operation. Also use this key to access Answer Machine from standby.
- **9. Send Key** : Make and answer calls.
- 10. Keypad: Enter phone numbers, characters, etc.

Press and hold a key (1.3 to 5.3) from standby to search for Phone Book entries of the column assigned to the key.

★/\$**Key** ★ ii: In a menu list, use to scroll to the previous page and in camera mode, use to turn on Mobile Light.

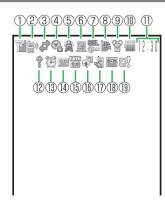
To display My Status (page 18-7), press and hold *证 from standby. #/學 **Key** ##論: Switch between uppercase, lowercase and numeric input modes, etc. In a menu list, use to scroll to the next page.

To set or cancel Manner Mode, press and hold ##해 from standby (page 2-11).

- 11. Internal Antenna: The antenna is built into your handset.
- 12. Monaural Speakers

- 13. Earpiece
- **14. Right Soft Key** : Access Yahoo! Keitai from standby.
- **15.Side Key** (a): Activate the camera. Also acts as the shutter button for the camera. Can also be set to one of the following functions: activate Manner Mode (Silent), activate Twinkle Light, activate Torch, or display Balance (page 11-13).
- **16. Shortcut Key** (a): Access the Shortcuts menu (page 13-44).
- 17. Memory Card Slot
- **18. End/Power Key** : Power handset on/off, end calls/operations and return to standby.
- External Display: Notifies of incoming calls, received messages and other information while your handset is closed.
- **20. Charging Indicator**: Lights during charging and goes out when charging is complete.
- 21. Main Camera
- 22. Mobile Light: Use as camera/video flash. Can also be used for Torch (page 11-13).
- 23.
 ☐ Logo: S! FeliCa contactless IC Card embedded. Place the ☐ logo near a reader/writer.
- **24. External Light**: Flashes for incoming calls, messages, etc.
- 25. Strap Eyelet
- 26. External Device Port/Earphone Microphone Jack: Connect AC Charger, Stereo Earphone, or other device.
- **27. Twinkle Light**: Lights when there is an incoming call or email.

Display Indicators



- ① 🖫 Signal Strength
 - Strong Weak
 - Moderate TFaint
 - Out of Range
- ② **|** Voice/Video Call
 - **■** Dial-up Connection
- ③ Packet Transmission
 - **(#)** Displaying Picture File with Location Information
 - **Ready** Packet Transmission Ready
 - Packet Network Range
 - **d** 3G Network Unavailable
- 4 % IC Card Lock Active (page 20-5)
- 5 New S! Cast (page 19-2)
 - Reception of Rights Object Indicates the reception of a content key (page 15-4) during operation.
 - Message Box Full
 - **ऑ Message Delivery Failed**
 - New S! Mail/SMS (page 15-3)
 - Delivery Report
- **⑥ ■** PC Website Connected (page 16-5)
 - New Live Monitor Info (pages 13-4, 16-16)
 - ☑ Memory Card Inserted (page 8-2)

7 🎥 Web SSL

Indicates a connection to an information page with security protection (page 16-3).

- Infrared Communication (page 10-2)
- **♦ USB Connection (page 10-6)**
- My Status Online (page 18-8)
- 8 Updating Software (page 21-12)

 - Appli Activated/Paused (page 17-3)
 - Music File Playing (page 7-3)
 - Music File Playback Paused
 - Video File Playing (page 7-3)
 - Streaming (page 7-7)
- (9) Manner Mode (Silent) (page 11-2)
 - Manner Mode (Alarms) (page 11-2)
 - %/%/% Original Manner Mode (page 11-2)
- **10 a Battery Level**

Low

- Sufficiently Charged
- Very Low
 - very Low
- Charge Immediately
- Charging (page 1-14)
- ① Time
- Password Lock Active (page 12-3)
 - Keypad Lock Active (page 12-7)
- (13) Marm Set (page 13-16)
- - || || || || || || Answer Phone Off and You Have a Message (pages 2-5, 13-18)

- (b) Wew Voicemail Message (page 14-5)
 - Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Voice Call) (page 14-3)Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Video Call) (page 14-3)
 - Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Voice and Video Calls)
 (page 14-3)
- **ⓑ ♣ Information Prompt (page 1-10)**
- ① 🜡 Missed Call(s) (page 2-9)
- [®] Secret Mode On (page 12-6)
- (19) W Hot Status Notice (Invitation) (page 18-3)

External Display Indicators



Signal Strength

Till Strong

Ti Moderate

T. Weak Y Faint

 Υ_{\times} Out of Range

N Offline Mode On (page 2-12)

② 🖳 Message Box Full

Message Delivery Failed

Mew S! Mail/SMS (page 15-3)

■ Delivery Report (page 15-17)

≥ New S! Mail/SMS and Delivery Report

Password Lock Active (page 12-3)

Keypad Lock Active (page 12-7)

🔊 Cannot Start Music Player (page 7-10) (page 20-5)

③ 📲 Missed Call(s) (page 2-9) Manner Mode (Silent) (page 11-2)

Manner Mode (Alarms) (page 11-2)

짧/짧/짧 Original Manner Mode (page 11-2)

4 W New Voicemail Message (page 14-5)

四/四/四/四/四/四 Answer Phone On and You Have a Message (pages 2-5, 13-18)

鹭/鹭/鹭/鹭/鹭 Answer Phone Off and You Have a Message (pages 2-5, 13-18)

Ⅲ Battery Level

■ Sufficiently Charged I low

■ Very Low Charge Immediately

→ Charging (page 1-14)

⑥ Time

Information Prompt

Information Prompt appears to inform you of missed calls, new messages and other information

When Information Prompt appears, scroll to an item and press 🔳

The following items are available.



P

Information Prompt Items

Stop Snooze : Cancel snooze (page 13-17)

Missed Calls : Missed calls (page 2-9)

Missed Calls: New Voice Mail message(s) at Voice Mail Center

(page 14-6)

Answer Phone : New message(s) recorded (page 2-5)

New Messages : Unread S! Mail/SMS (page 15-3)

Unsent Messages: Unsent S! Mail/SMS

■ Partly Sent
 □ Delivered
 □ Missed CT
 □ Notification
 : Unread delivery report(s) (page 15-17)
 : Missed Circle Talk calls (page 2-9)
 : New Hot Status notification (page 18-3)

New S! Cast : Content update(s) available (page 19-2)

S! Cast Info : S! Cast update failed (page 19-3)

Weather Updated: Weather report update available (page 19-4)
Update Failed : Live Monitor update failed (page 13-4)

Software Update: Software updated (page 21-12)

Content Key Memory Full (Keys Full)

: Content key cannot be saved any more

Resume S! Appli : S! Appli paused

IC Card Request : Request from Reader/Writer

- To close Information Prompt, press To redisplay Information Prompt, press and hold .
- If the number of unchecked items exceeds 100, "

 " appears instead

 of the number of unchecked items.
- When New S! Cast, S! Cast Info, Update Failed and IC Card Request prompts appear, access is available to only the most recent item

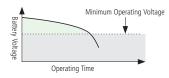
Battery & Charger

Getting Started

Before using your handset for the first time, charge the battery.

Battery Pack

 The battery pack of your handset uses a lithium ion battery. It has a tendency to gradually lose its voltage with the operating time as shown in the figure below.



- Extreme temperatures will reduce battery capacity and shorten the operating time. Do not use the battery pack in high temperatures. This may shorten battery life.
- Charging at low temperatures does not produce the best results. Make sure you charge the battery pack at temperatures of 5 to 35 degrees.
- When storing the battery pack separately, make sure you put it in a case, etc. and store it in a dry and cool place. This will avoid short-circuiting the battery pack terminal. It is recommended that you store it uncharged.
- Repeated charging and discharging of a battery shortens the operating time

- When disposing of a used battery pack, insulate the terminal with tape or
 place the battery pack into a plastic bag and then take it to your nearest
 SoftBank Shop, a recycle shop or follow the local disposal regulations for
 environmental conservation.
- Do not bend the USIM card or place heavy objects on it.

Battery Drain

- The battery pack discharges little by little when stored for a long time even
 if it is not used. It self-discharges at a rate of 10 to 20% per month and
 about 50% per half a year.
- If the handset is used in a location with poor signal reception or left in Standby outside the service area, or if you use the mobile light or launch S! Appli, it will shorten the battery's operating time.

Battery Level

 The battery level on the display (page 1-9) changes with the operating time. Charge or replace it when the level is low. When the battery is about to run out " " ", a message appears and the battery alarm tone sounds. The handset shuts down after 30 seconds.

Charging

- The battery pack must be inside handset to charge it. Use a specified AC Charger and In-Car Charge (optional).
- Clean Cable and Handset External Device Port and battery pack's terminal with a dry cotton swab. It may cause contact failure if it is unclean.

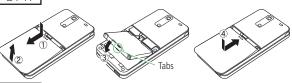
 If the message *Please check connection with your charger* appears, clean the External Device Port and battery pack terminal with a dry cotton swab, etc, and try again.

When the message still does not disappear, stop charging immediately, and take the battery pack to your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).

- Do not charge the battery pack in humid places.
- The battery pack can be charged with the handset turned on.
- When charging while your handset is turned on, " appears on the display and turns to " " when charging is complete.
- The handset and charger may warm during charging. However, if it overheats, stop using immediately. There may be some defect.
- If a call arrives while the handset is being charged, it sounds the ringtone, vibrates, or flashes the external light in the same way as usual.

Inserting & Removing the Battery Pack

814T



815T * Coordinate Panel (bottom panel) is the battery cover for 815T.



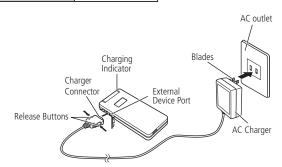
- Press down and slide battery cover (1) and lift out (2)
- Align battery pack terminals with handset terminals. Push battery in (3)
 - To remove battery pack, lift battery pack up by tabs.
- **3** Re-attach battery cover (4)

Note

 Do not remove the battery pack while handset power is on. Using your fingernail, lift out battery pack by the tab. Do not remove battery pack in any other way.

Charging with the AC Charger

Charging Time Approx. 120 min.



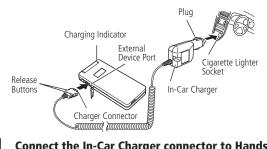
- **Connect the AC Charger connector to Handset**
 - Inscription on the AC Charger connector should face down.
- Insert the plug into an AC outlet Charging Indicator lights red and charging begins.
- After Charging Indicator goes out, remove the plug from the AC outlet
- Remove the connector from Handset
 - Press and hold Release Buttons to remove the AC Charger connector from Handset

Note

- AC Charger supports a power supply of 100 to 240 V AC.
- AC Charger is exclusively for use in Japan.

Charging with the In-Car Charger (Optional)

Charging Time | Approx. 120 min.



- Connect the In-Car Charger connector to Handset
 - Inscription on the In-Car Charger connector should face down.
- Insert the plug into the cigarette lighter socket in a car

Charging Indicator lights red and charging begins.

After Charging Indicator goes out, remove the plug from the cigarette lighter socket

Remove the connector from Handset

Press and hold Release Buttons to remove the In-Car Charger connector from Handset

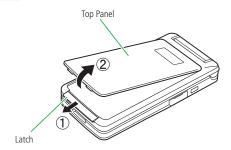
- Do not use the In-Car Charger when the car engine is not running. Doing so may drain the battery.
- If you move away from the car, unplug the In-Car Charger. In a car where the cigarette lighter socket works even after removing the car key (the Charging Indicator illuminates even after removing the car key), leaving the In-Car Charger plugged in may drain the battery.
- Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law. Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking is permitted.

Coordinate Panels 815T

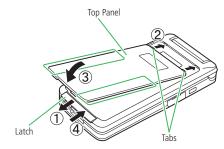
Change handset design with Coordinate Panels (Top Panel, Inner Sheets and Bottom Panel). Each set comes with a QR Code. Scan QR Code and download Keitaideco (matching themes such as ringtones, wallpapers, etc.) to coordinate with panels (page 13-7).

Changing Top Panel

Removal



- **Pull Latch in direction of arrow (1)**
- Lift top panel out as indicated by the arrow (2)



- 1 Pull Latch (①)
- 2 Insert tabs as shown (2)
- **3** Mount panel into position (③)
 - Press Top Panel down firmly, by the sides (portion indicated in illustration).
- 4 Close latch (4)

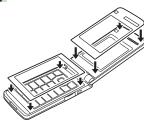
Note

• Remove protective film before using Coordinate Panels.

Attaching Inner Sheets

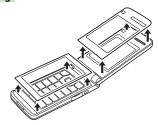
Inner Sheets use a reusable adhesive for easy attachment/removal.

Attaching



1 Attach sheets as shown

Removing



1 Remove sheets as shown

Turning Handset Power On/Off

Turning Handset Power On

1 Press and hold

Standby Display appears.

aiT

- After turning handset power on:
 - Wake-up alarm sounds (page 11-6).
 - · Charging Indicator illuminates.
 - · External Light flashes.
- If **PIN Settings** (page 12-2) is set to **ON**, enter your PIN.
- The following windows appear the first time you turn on the power of your handset or after performing *Reset All* or *Reset Setting* (page 12-8).
 - Date&Time Settings (page 1-18)

Turning Handset Power Off

1 Press and hold 🚎

The power is turned off.

Tip

- Before your handset turns off, it does the following.
 - The shutdown tone sounds (page 11-6).
 - The External Light flashes.

Retrieving Network Information

Before using network-related services (Yahoo! Keitai, Messaging or S! Appli), retrieve network connection information.

The first time you press ●, , ☞, a prompt appears.

In Standby, press 🔳, 🖫, 🗹

2 Select $YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Handset connects to the network and Network Information is retrieved.

Note

- If Network Information is not acquired, some features will be limited.
- After you replace the USIM Card, make sure you retrieve network information

Tip

 You can also retrieve network information from the Main menu (page 11-16).

Date & Time

1 In Standby, press $\bigcirc \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \bigcirc$

2 Select *Phone Settings* \rightarrow \bigcirc *Clock* \rightarrow \bigcirc

3 Select *Date&Time*→ ■→Enter the year, month, date and time → ■

 To set the date and time, enter the last two digits of the year and the month, the day, the hour, and the minute in two digits respectively. Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

 While entering the date and time, you can move the cursor by pressing o. You can also increase or decrease the numbers selected by the cursor by pressing .

• The day of the week is set automatically.

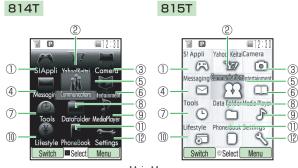
Tip

You can:

- Enter a date from 2000/01/02 to 2099/12/30.
- Switch the clock to 12-hour system (page 11-9).
- Change the clock display format (page 11-7).
- Set DST (Daylight Saving Time) (page 13-37).

Accessing Functions from Main Menu

To access the Main menu, press lacktriangle in Standby. Use $\bf \P$ to select a menu icon and press $\bf \blacksquare$ to access that menu.



Main Menu

①S! Appli

Access applications such as games (Chapter 17).

Library

- Settings
- Card Sync
- Certification
- Information

2 Yahoo! Keitai

Access Yahoo! Keitai menu and download pictures, melodies and applications. Use PC Browser for Internet access to the Web (Chapter 16).

- Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks Saved Pages Enter URL History
 - Live Monitor Settings

③ Camera

• PC Browser

Take pictures and record videos (Chapter 6).

- Mobile Digital Video Mail Video Short Video Scan Data
- (4) Messaging

Create S! Mail/SMS messages. Also check received and sent S! Mail/SMS messages (Chapter 15).

- Message Box Create Msg.
- Retrieve Msq. Drafts Templates • Unsent Msg.
- Server Mail Settings

⑤Communications

You can communicate with other users or enjoy shopping (Chapter 18).

- S! Town S! Loop • Circle Talk Hot Status
- **6** Entertainment

Access S! Cast functions, launch BookSurfing and visit Ku-man's Room (Chapter 19).

- SI Cast BookSurfing
- Ku-man's Room

(7)Tools

Access preinstalled accessories (Chapters 13, 21).

- Alarms Notepad
- Answer Phone
- Dictionary
- Calculator Calendar
- Tasks Useful Tools
- Time Table Location Navi

- Backup
- Update

® Data Folder

Save/access files here (Chapter 9).

- Pictures • Ring Song · Tone
- Music • S! Appli
- Videos Lifestyle-Appli Books Templates
- Main Menu Flash(R)
- Gamendeco Keitaideco
- Other Documents Memory Status

Media Player

Play audio and video files (Chapter 7). Videos

- Audio
- Streaming

10 Lifestyle

Services (Chapter 20) can be accessed using an S! FeliCa IC card.

Lifestyle

Card Settings

(1)Phone Book

Save and access Phone Book information (Chapter 4).

- My Details
- Phone Book
- Add New
- Call LogS! Addr. Book

GroupSettings

Memory Status

®Settings

Modify and confirm handset settings (Chapters 11, 12).

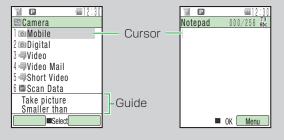
- SoundsPhone Settings
- DisplaySecurity
- Phone Setting
 Call Settings
- Connectivity

Location

Idle ScreenSimple Mode ON

PriorityMemory

- About the items shown after you select an item in the Main menu, the icons and the order of appearance are partly different in Icon View and in Tab View (page 1-21).
- You can view the default settings of each item in Default Settings (page 21-2).
- The cursor appears as "|" or " " when entering text, or " in the menu, etc.
- Items selected by the cursor are displayed in the guide display of the menu.



Main Menu View

Change Main menu view from Icon View (default) to Tab View. In Tab View, sub menus appear when a tab is selected.

In Standby, press

→

(Switch)

■ To return to Icon View, press (Switch).

Select an item

Sub menu items appear to the right. To select an item, press [] or and scroll to the item.



Tab View

aiT

• From the Tab View, press [\sigma] (Menu) to perform the following: Change Order (right) / Gamendeco (page 11-7) / Reset Setting

Customize Main Menu

Customize Main Menu design (icons, font color, cursor color, etc.).

In Standby, press

Changing the Order of Items

Press [x] (Menu) \rightarrow Change Order $\rightarrow [\bullet]$ \rightarrow Select an item $\rightarrow [\bullet]$ →Select a position →

● To restore to default order, select *Reset Order*.

Changing Icons and Wallpaper

Press $[\nabla T]$ (Menu) \rightarrow Set Images $\rightarrow [\square]$ \rightarrow Original/Options/

Phone Memory/Keitaideco→

• Original - Default theme.

● Phone Memory - Select a theme from Data Folder.

• Options - Set different themes for icons, cursor and wallpaper. Font Color

Press [Y] (Menu) \rightarrow Font Color \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a color \rightarrow \bigcirc

Wallpaper Press [x] (Menu) \rightarrow Wallpaper \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Phone Memory/

Memory Card \longrightarrow Select a folder \longrightarrow Select a file **Icons**

Select an icon $\rightarrow [\Sigma]$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Icons \rightarrow [\blacksquare] \rightarrow Phone Memory/$ *Memory Card* $\rightarrow \square$ \rightarrow Select a file $\rightarrow \square$

Cursor Color

Press $\boxed{}$ (Menu) \rightarrow *Highlight* \rightarrow $\boxed{}$ \rightarrow Select a color \rightarrow $\boxed{}$

Resetting

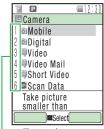
Press [Y] (Menu) $\rightarrow Reset\ Options \rightarrow [\bigcirc] \rightarrow YES \rightarrow [\bigcirc]$

Keitaideco - Set Keitaideco themes.

Press () in the preview window.

Select Menu Items Using Keypad

Enter the menu number on handset keypad (回见-国品, 来证, 無酬) for direct access to that menu.



- The number corresponding to the keypad

Codes

Your security code, center access code, call barring service code and Internet security code are required for some functions and settings.

- Write down security code, center access code, call barring service code and Internet security code. If those codes are lost, contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).
- Do not reveal your security code, center access code, call barring service code and Internet security code. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

Security Code

Security Code is a four-digit number. It is required to use various functions. Your security code can be changed (page 12-2). The default setting is "9999".

Center Access Code

Center Access Code is a four-digit number assigned at the time of contract. It is required to perform optional service operations from a fixed-line phone or to subscribe to fee-based content on the Internet.

Call Barring Service Code

Call Barring Code is a four-digit number assigned at the time of contract. It is required to set call barring. The code can be changed (page 14-9).

 If Call Barring Service Code is incorrectly entered three consecutive times, Call Barring settings are locked. Change Call Barring Service Code and Center Access Code. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).

Internet Security Code

Internet Security Code is required to set Internet security. The code can be changed (page 12-9).

Making a Call	2-2
Making International Calls	2-3
Caller ID	2-3
Redialing	2-4
Answering a Call	2-4
When You Cannot Answer Immediately	
Placing an Incoming Call on Hold	2-5
Recording a Message to Answering Machine	2-5
Playing Recorded Messages	2-6
Deleting Recorded Messages	2-6
Rejecting a Call	2-6
Engaged Call Operations	
Adjusting Earpiece Volume	2-7
Recording Other Party's Voice	2-7
Number Memo	2-7
Switching to Handsfree Operation	2-7
Call Log	2-8
Viewing Dialed Numbers	2-8
Viewing Received Calls	2-9
Setting Call Log Lock	2-10
Viewing Call Time	2-10
Viewing Call Costs	2-10
Setting Cost Limit	2-11
Owner Information	2-11
Viewing Owner Information during a Call	2-11
Setting/Canceling Manner Mode	2-11
Setting/Canceling Offline Mode	
About Emergency Calls	
Emergency Call Location Notification	

Making a Call

1 In Standby, enter a phone number and press 🔼

The call is made.

- Confirm that the signal level is sufficient before making a call (page 1-8).
- Include the area code for all numbers.
- When making a call to mobile, car, or PHS phones, enter all the digits of the other party's phone number starting with "0".
- Press er or press and hold for to delete the entire number and return to Standby. Press for to delete the last number entered.
- When the line is busy, the busy tone will be heard. Press , and call again after a while.
- **2** Press real to end the call

Note

- Hold earpiece slightly away from your ear. Handset speaker is located close to the earpiece. High-volume sounds emitted from speaker can impair hearing.
- When handset is open, the maximum playback volume (ringtones and all audio) is Level 3. The maximum volume for Ascending Volume and Descending Volume is also Level 3.
- When the handset is closed, no restrictions apply to the volume of audio playback or ringtones, etc.
- Antenna is built into the handset. Signal sensitivity may be reduced if
 you touch or cover the portion of the body containing the internal
 antenna (page 1-7). In particular, do not affix things like stickers onto
 this portion of the body. Doing so may prevent you from making/
 receiving calls, sending/receiving messages or accessing the Web.
- Do not wrap the Stereo Earphone (optional) cord around the handset.
- Do not bring Stereo Earphone close to Internal Antenna. Doing so may cause noise.
- The orientation and location of the handset may affect signal strength.
- When Cost Limit (page 2-11) is set and the limit is reached, outgoing calls are blocked. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends.

Tip

Voice Call / Video Call (page 5-2) / Circle Talk (page 18-13) /
Intl. Calls (right) / Send Message (pages 15-5, 15-10) /
Pause (page 13-46) / Manual Hyphen (enter a "-") / Hide My ID
(page 11-15) / Show My ID (page 11-15)

- During calls, press (Menu) to perform the following:
 End Call | Hold | Mute My Voice | Mute All | Phone Book
 (page 4-8) | Call Log | Voice Record | My Details | DTMF OFF
 * Subscription to Call Waiting (page 14-6) or Multiparty Call
 (page 14-7) is required to use the Hold feature. For details, contact
- You can receive a call while browsing the Web and receive mail during a call. This is called multiple connections.

SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).

Making International Calls

This section explains how to make an international call from Japan.

- A separate application is required for using the international call service.
 For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36). See page 13-43 for details about the operational procedure.
- The handset does not support international roaming, so it cannot be used outside of Japan.

Adding the International Code and Country Code

- In Standby, enter a phone number→ (Menu)
 → Intl. Calls → •
- **2** Select a country→
 - "+" and the country code are added before the phone number.
- 3 Press 🔼

Tip

Caller ID

Caller ID displays the caller's phone number on the receiver's handset. Set your handset to show or hide your handset number for outgoing calls (page 11-15).

Redialing

Make calls from Dialed Number. Information such as the phone number, date and time you called is recorded for up to 20 as dialed calls.

1 In Standby, press 💿

Dialed numbers appear with date and time. Name appears if saved in Phone Book.

- 2 Select a record and press 🗷
 - Press and hold to make a Circle Talk call.
- 3 Press 🖭 to end the call

Tip

- If the Navigation Key settings (page 11-12) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- Turning the handset off does not delete the Dialed Number record.
- All the calls may not be saved to the call log depending on the circumstance.
- From Dialed Number, press ☑ (Menu) to perform the following:
 Voice Call / Video Call (page 5-2) / Circle Talk (page 18-13) / Intl.
 Calls (page 2-3) / Send Message (pages 15-5, 15-10) / To Phone
 Book (page 4-3) / Add to List (page 11-14) / Delete / Hide My ID (page 11-15) / Show My ID (page 11-15) / Call Log Lock (page 2-10)
- If you make a call to a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-4) set to ON when Secret Mode (page 12-6) is set to Hide, only the phone number is displayed on dialed numbers.

Answering a Call

- 1 Press 🖊 when a call is received
- **2** Press re to end the call

- Pressing also answers an incoming call.
- You can answer calls just by opening the handset when Open to Talk (page 11-13) is set to ON.
- If you miss a call, Information Prompt (page 1-10) appears.
- If the caller's information is saved to Phone Book, the saved information (name and picture) appears when a call is received. If the caller is saved as Secret (page 4-4), only the phone number appears when Secret Mode (page 12-6) is set to *Hide*.
- When you receive a call with no Caller ID, either *Unavailable*, Withheld, or *Payphone* appears.
- To adjust the ringtone volume while receiving a call, use [.].
- To stop ringtone during incoming call, press and hold **a**.
- End calls by closing handset. This feature is unavailable if Stereo Earphone (optional) is connected.

When You Cannot Answer Immediately

Placing an Incoming Call on Hold

Place an incoming call on hold when you are unable to answer it right away.

1 Press when a call is received

Voice guidance in Japanese notifies the caller that you are unable to answer the call at the moment.

- **2** Press **r** to answer the call
- **3** Press ro end the call

Note

- Caller is charged for the call while placed on hold.
- Pressing while caller is on hold, terminates the call.
- This feature is unavailable when Open to Talk (page 11-13) is set to

Tip

- Pressing also answers a call placed on hold.
- Besides ∠, and (for video call) you can also answer the call by pressing ○○-□□, ★□ or #₩ when Any Key Answer (page 11-13) is set to ON.
- When you are unable to answer a call (ie: your handset is out of range, a call is in progress, etc.) divert calls to; a preset phone number (page 14-3) or Voice Mail Center (page 14-5).

Recording a Message to Answering Machine

Record a caller's message to your handset when you are unable to answer a voice call. Save up to five 30-second messages to Answering Machine.

1 Press and hold when a call is received

Outgoing message plays and recording starts.

 When recording capacity becomes full or the call ends, it stops automatically.

lote

- Answering Machine is unavailable for video calls (page 5-2) and Call Waiting (page 14-6).
- When five messages are recorded, Answering Machine is disabled.
 Delete messages to activate Answering Machine.

- Press and hold to record a message.
- To answer a call while the answer message is playing or a caller's message is being recorded, press
- Press (4) when recording a message to hear the message through the speaker.
- To adjust the volume while the answer message is playing or a caller's message is being recorded, use .

Playing Recorded Messages

Main menu Tools Answer Phone

- **1** Select *Recordings* \rightarrow \blacksquare
- **2** Select a message→

 ■

" $\[\]$ " indicates unchecked messages, and " $\[\]$ " indicates checked messages.

Tip

• Press in Standby to view recorded messages.

Deleting Recorded Messages

Main menu Tools Answer Phone

- **1** Select *Recordings*→

Rejecting a Call

1 Press (Reject) when a call is received

- When the Call Forward (page 14-3) and Voice Mail (page 14-5) services are deactivated, you can reject an incoming call by pressing (Divert) when a call is received.
- By activating Call Barring (page 11-14), you can reject all incoming calls automatically.

Engaged Call Operations

Adjusting Earpiece Volume

1 Use 🚺 during a call

The current setting appears.

2 Use 🐧 to adjust the earpiece volume

Tip

 Even if the volume is changed during a call it returns to its original setting when the call ends.

Recording Other Party's Voice

Voice Record allows you to record the other party's voice during a call. Maximum recording time is 60 seconds.

- **1** During a call, press \mathbf{v} (Menu) \rightarrow Voice Record \rightarrow \mathbf{e}
 - Recording stops when the maximum time is reached or the call ends.
 To stop recording manually, press

Tip

- The recording is automatically saved to the Ring Song · Tone folder (page 9-2).
- For details on playing Voice Record recordings, see page 13-36.

Number Memo

Use the keypad to take a memo of a phone number or other number during a voice or video call. After the call ends, you can save the number to Phone Book or use it to make a call. You can store up to five number memos.

1 Press the keys on the keypad during a call

After the call ends, the number memo is automatically saved.

- You can enter a total of up to 32 numbers and symbols (*, #, +, -, P).
- See page 13-36 for details on how to view a number memo.

in

- Number Memo is available when making video calls, too.
- Alternatively, press the keys on the keypad during a call, press (Menu) and select *Number Memo* to save a number memo.

Switching to Handsfree Operation

Switching to the handsfree operation during a call enables you to hear the other party's voice through a speaker.

- 1 Press 🖫 (🌗) during a call
 - To cancel the handsfree operation, press ② (¾).

Call Log

The last 20 dialed numbers and received calls including Circle Talk calls can be viewed.

Viewing Dialed Numbers

1 In Standby, press 🕣

- To switch from the Dialed Number window to the Received Call window, press 🖭 or 💽.
- To switch between Circle Talk call log and voice/video call log, press

 (🎉 / 🗟).
- In Dialed Number, the icons shown below appear.
 - lndicates outgoing voice calls.
 - Indicates outgoing video calls.
- For Circle Talk call log, the icons shown below appear.
 - lndicates outgoing individual Circle Talk calls.
 - implicates outgoing group Circle Talk calls.

- If the Navigation Key settings (page 11-12) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- You can access call log from *Phone Book* in the Main menu (page 1-18).
- Select a number from call log and press to make a voice call or and to make a video call.
- To make a Circle Talk call, select an entry from call log then press and hold (page 18-13).
- Turning the handset off does not delete the Dialed Number record.
- When there are 20 Dialed Number records, the oldest records are replaced by new ones.
- When you make a call to a Phone Book entry, the name saved to Phone Book is displayed on the call log. If you make a call to a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-4) set to *ON* when Secret Mode (page 12-6) is set to *Hide*, however, only the phone number is displayed.
- From Dialed Number, press ☑ (Menu) to perform the following:
 Voice Call / Video Call (page 5-2) / Circle Talk (page 18-13) / Intl.
 Calls (page 2-3) / Send Message (pages 15-5, 15-10) / To Phone
 Book (page 4-3) / Add to List (page 11-14) / Delete / Hide My ID
 (page 11-15) / Show My ID (page 11-15) / Call Log Lock
 (page 2-10)

Viewing Received Calls

1 In Standby, press 🕒

- To switch from the Received Call window to the Dialed Number window, press 🔊 or 🕞.
- To switch between received Circle Talk call log and voice/video call log, press (♣/♣).
- In Received Call, the icons shown below appear.
 - √ Fraction | Amount | Amo
 - √ Missed Voice/Video calls

 - ₩ Rejected Voice/Video calls with no Caller ID
 - Received Voice calls from public phones
- For received Circle Talk call log, the icons shown below appear.
 - Received Circle Talk calls
 - Missed Circle Talk calls
 - Rejected Circle Talk calls
 - Rejected Circle Talk calls with no Caller ID

- If the Navigation Key settings (page 11-12) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- You can access call log from *Phone Book* in the Main menu (page 1-18).
- Select a number from call log and press to make a voice call or and to make a video call.
- To make a Circle Talk call, select an entry from call log then press and hold (page 18-13).
- Turning the handset off does not delete the Received Call record.
- When there are 20 Received Call records, the oldest records are replaced by new ones.
- When you receive a call from a Phone Book entry, the name saved to
 Phone Book is displayed on the call log. If you receive a call from a
 Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-4) set to *ON* when Secret
 Mode (page 12-6) is set to *Hide*, however, only the phone number is
 displayed.

Setting Call Log Lock

Set Call Log Lock to require Security Code for accessing Call Log (including Circle Talk Call Log).

- 1 In Standby, press \bigcirc / \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow Call Log $Lock \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **3** Select *Lock|Unlock*→

Tip

• Call Log Lock can be set even when the Circle Talk Call Log is displayed.

Viewing Call Time

Check the previous or total call time.

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Call Time&Cost

Viewing the Total Call Time

Select *All Calls* $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow *Time* $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

Viewing the Last Call Time

Select $Last\ Call \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Time \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Resetting the Total Call Time

Select $All\ Calls \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Time \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \ Yi \ (Menu) \rightarrow Reset \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22) \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Note

- The displayed call time serves as a guide only.
- The total call time does not include mail communications, Web browsing, and Circle Talk connection and talking time.
- Up to 277 hours 46 minutes and 39 seconds can be displayed for the total call time.

Viewing Call Costs

View the cost for the last call or the total cost for all calls. The data for the total cost is saved to the USIM card.



Viewing the Last Call Cost

Select $Last Call \rightarrow \bigcirc Cost \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Viewing the Total Call Cost

Select *All Calls* $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ $\rightarrow Cost \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Resetting the Total Call Cost

Select $All\ Calls \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Cost \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow Reset \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter your PIN2 (page 1-5) $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

Setting the Currency

Select $Cost\ Unit$ \longrightarrow \longrightarrow \longrightarrow (Menu) \longrightarrow Settings \longrightarrow \longrightarrow Enter your PIN2 (page 1-5) \longrightarrow \longrightarrow Enter a currency (three characters) \longrightarrow Enter a rate \longrightarrow \longrightarrow YES \longrightarrow

Setting Call Cost Display

Select *Cost Display* \rightarrow $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Note

- The displayed call cost serves as a guide only and may differ from the actual call cost billed.
- Sum of charges appears for Multiparty Call (page 14-7).
- The total call cost does not include mail communication and Web browsing charges, and the charge for the number of remarks made in Circle Talk sessions.
- When you make an international call, the call cost is not displayed.
- Call Cost may be unavailable depending on your subscription.

Setting Cost Limit

Set maximum cost for your monthly voice/video calls.

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Call Time&Cost

- **1** Select *Cost Limit*→
 - If Cost Limit has been set, you can view the balance.
- **2** Press **(Menu)**→*Set Max Limit*→
- 3 Enter your PIN2 (page 1-5)→ (twice)→Enter the maximum cost limit→

Note

- You cannot make voice and video calls if the total cost reaches the specified maximum call limit. A call will be disconnected if the total cost reaches the specified maximum call limit during the call.
- Cost Limit is unavailable if Call Cost (above) is unavailable.

Owner Information

Display *My Details* (page 4-11) such as the phone number and email address of your handset.

Main menu Phone Book

1 Select *My Details*→

The owner information appears.

Viewing Owner Information during a Call

During a call, press \boxed{w} (Menu) $\rightarrow My$ Details \rightarrow

Setting/Canceling Manner Mode

Set Mode Settings to Silent to avoid disturbing others in public areas. When manner mode is set, "" appears.

- Turn the handset off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- In airplanes, turn off your handset so that it does not disturb flight safety.
- In such places as hospitals and research institutes, where no use of cell phones is allowed, turn off your handset so that it does not affect precision apparatuses.
- In such quite places as restaurants and hotel lobbies, be careful so that your talking voice does not bother others around you.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Activating Manner Mode

1 In Standby, press and hold ##

Manner mode is set.

Canceling Manner Mode

In Standby, press and hold ## while manner mode is set

Manner mode is canceled.

lote

- Shutter click and recording start/end tone sound even in manner mode.
- If you set your answer status for Circle Talk to Auto Join in My Status (pages 18-5, 18-7), then you are automatically connected to Circle Talk, so you hear the other party's voice from the speaker even if manner mode is set.

Tip

 Vibration and alarm settings in manner mode (page 11-3) can be changed.

Setting/Canceling Offline Mode

Use offline mode to temporarily suspend all handset transmissions. In offline mode, incoming/outgoing calls and network services, such as transmission of S! Mail/SMS are blocked.

When offline mode is set to \emph{ON} , the signal strength indicator changes to " $\mbox{\ensuremath{\mathbb{N}}}$ ".



Note

- When offline mode is set to ON, incoming calls are blocked. Make sure
 offline mode is set to OFF if you need to use your handset as usual.
- Emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard)) are not possible when offline mode is set to ON.

About Emergency Calls

Emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast quard)) are available, even when the following restrictions are set.

- Password Lock (page 12-3)
- Call Barring (page 14-8)

Note

 If a video call is made to an emergency service, the call becomes a voice call.

Emergency Call Location Notification

Caller's location is notified to emergency agencies for emergency calls (110, 119 and 118). Handset calculates location based on base station's location.

- * If handset signal is received by a distant base station, location information may not be accurate.
- Location notification may be inaccurate, depending on the caller's location and signal strength.
- This system may not operate if the responding agency has not installed the proper system.
- If emergency numbers (110, 118 and 119) are dialed with the 184 prefix, location information is not provided. However, emergency agencies may retrieve location information in life-threatening cases.
- This service is unavailable when roaming.
- No application fees or Connection fees apply.

About Text Entry	3-2
Switching Text Entry Modes	3-2
Key Assignment (Standard Mode)	3-3
Entering Characters	3-4
Kanji/Hiragana/Katakana	3-4
Text Conversion Functions	3-10
Using Word Predictions	3-10
Adding a Word to the User Dictionary	3-12
Editing Text	3-13
Editing Entered Text	3-13
Copy/Cut/Paste	3-13
Undo	3-14
Insert	3-14
Additional Functions	3-14

About Text Entry

Enter hiragana, katakana, kanji, alphanumerics, symbols, pictographs and emoticons.

There are four kinds of input methods: Standard mode, Beeper mode (page 3-9), T9 mode and Multi-tap mode. Unless otherwise noted, text entry operations are described for use in the text entry window using Standard mode.

Text Entry Window



- Number of characters entered/Maximum number of characters allowed is displayed. The maximum number of characters allowed varies depending on the function
- 2 Indicates the current entry mode.
- ③ Selects the range of text.
 By pressing when a text range is selected, you can perform operations such as copying or saving the selected text (pages 3-12, 3-13).
- ④ By pressing
 (Menu), you can perform operations such as arranging or editing mail text (pages 3-13, 15-7).

Switching Text Entry Modes

1 In a text entry window, press 🖫

Unavailable text entry modes are not displayed.

2 Select an input mode→●

Input mode is switched.

Input Mode Icons

🐻 : Kanji (hiragana)

Double-byte alphanumerics (upper case)

Single-byte alphanumerics (upper case)

a : Single-byte alphanumerics (lower case)

Double-byte numbers

: Single-byte numbers

URL: Enter addresses from the address library (page 3-9).

Pict: Enter pictographs. (^-^): Enter emoticons.

My Pict: Enter pictographs in My Pictograms folder.

Tip

 In Input Method (page 3-16), you can switch between Standard mode, Beeper mode, T9 mode, and Multi-tap mode. The above icons are displayed in Standard Mode. If you switch to Beeper Mode, the icon changes from " # " to " # ".

Key Assignment (Standard Mode)

Input Mode Key	Kanji/Hiragana* (Double-byte)	Katakana (Single-byte)	Upper case Alphanumerics (Double & Single-byte)	Lower case Alphanumerics (Double & Single-byte)	Numbers (Double & Single-byte)
า .ชู้	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオアイウエオ	.@1	.@1	1
≥ ^b	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABC2	abc2	2
∃å	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEF3	def3	3
4 to	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	GHI4	ghi4	4
5 % S %	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKL5	jkl5	5
6 table 1 tab	はひふへほ	ハヒフへホ	MN06	mno6	6
7,\$ 7,pgrs	まみむめも	FKYEL	PQRS7	pqrs7	7
8 tuy	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	TUV8	tuv8	8
9.5	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZ9	wxyz9	9
0.to	わをんー、。	ワヲン- 、。	~/?!0	~/?!0	0
★ **	Pictographs, Emoticons, Custom, * (dakuten), * (handakuten), — (cho-on), 、 (touten), 。 (kuten)	* (dakuten), * (handakuten), Custom, — (cho-on), 、 (touten), 。 (kuten)			Pictographs, Emoticons, Custom
## A/a	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Toggle case	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Toggle case			Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL
	Determine entered text/finish text entry			Finish text entry	
•	Move cursor, Insert line breaks by pressing Move up and down the list of conversion predictions with	Move cursor	Move cursor Insert line breaks by pressing 😱		
297/xt	Delete entered text (page 3-13)				
	Display characters in opposite order			_	

^{*} While assigning a reading in hiragana to an entry in the user dictionary (page 3-12), you can enter only double-byte hiragana and " — " (cho-on).

Entering Characters

Kanji/Hiragana/Katakana

Enter characters in kanji (hiragana) entry mode, and it converts to kanji, etc. Example: Entering 須々木

In a text entry window, enter すずき

lacktriangle Press \Box (three times) \rightarrow \Box (three times) \rightarrow \Box □ﷺ (twice).

Press 📮

■ To exit the list and enter characters after. すずき, press タッッ/メャ .



Use • to select 須々木→ •

*須々*太 is determined

To finish text entry, press
 after accepting entered text.

Tip

 In kanji (hiragana) entry mode, entered text is converted in segments of words, phrases, and clauses. When it is not converted to your target kanji, change the range of selected text by using •• and then try again by pressing (\mathbf{Q}) . For example, if you enter $\mathbb{Z}\mathcal{A}$ やまさとし and convert by pressing 😱 , 小 宫山聡 is displayed. If you want to segment it into こみや and まさとし, press 🥅 as shown on the screen on the right, select \subset みや with the cursor, and select your target kanji from the list of



conversion predictions by pressing . If you press ** after a character to which " " (dakuten) and " (handakuten) cannot be added while converting text, " — " (cho-on), ", " (touten) and ", " (kuten) are displayed.

Lower Case (a, ⊃ etc.)

In all the input modes except Numeric, you can change the case of a character selected by the cursor (unconverted character) (compatible characters only).

Example: Changing $\bar{\sigma}$ to lower case

1 In a text entry window, press 📆

あ is entered.

2 Press #^{A/a}→ •

ぁ is determined.

Adding " or "

In kanji (hiragana) entry mode and single-byte katakana entry mode, you can add " $\tilde{}$ " (dakuten) and " $\tilde{}$ " (handakuten) to a character selected by the cursor (unconverted character) (compatible characters only). Example: Entering \mathcal{D}^r

1 In a text entry window, press 🚉

カ' is entered.

2 Press ★***

が is determined.

Tip

When the cursor is on a character to which " " " (dakuten) and " " (handakuten) cannot be added, or when the cursor is to the right of a character (unconverted), you can enter " — " (cho-on), " " (touten) and " " (kuten) by pressing * ".

Phonetic Conversion

Enter alternate readings to search for kanji. Example: Entering *鯔(すずき)*

1 In a text entry window, enter すずき

2 Press 🖪 (twice)

The kanji candidate is displayed.

●When *单漢候補* is not displayed in a text entry window, the word cannot be converted with phonetic conversion.

3 Select **#**→ •

is determined.

Tip

Reading Characters (symbols)	
いっぱん	#&X@§☆, etc. These are included also in きごう.
がくじゅつ	$+-\pm \times \div =$, etc. These are included also in きごう.
かっこ	''""(), etc. These are included also in きごう.
ぎりしゃ	ABΓαβγ, etc.
たんい	゜′″℃¥\$, etc. These are included also in <i>きごう</i> .
ろ し あ	АБВабв, etc.
きじゅつ	、。, . ・:, etc. These are included also in きごう.
きごう	、。, . · : , etc.
	— г¬ , etc.

Proper Name Conversion

In Proper Name Conversion, predictions appear as you enter each character. Example: Entering 理香梨 (Akari)

1 In a text entry window, enter あかり (Akari)→ ○→ Use • to select 名前変換 (Name Conversion)→ ■

2 Select **#** (A)→ •

3 Select **蒼** (ka)→**●**

4 Select *\mathbb{A} (ri)→ • (twice)

Hiragana to Alphanumerics/Katakana Conversion

Enter alphanumerics and katakana in kanji (hiragana) entry mode. Example: Entering *TOM* (single-byte) in kanji (hiragana) entry mode

- In a text entry window, press the key to which the character is assigned
 - Press $\blacksquare_{n}^{\mathbb{H}}$ (once) → $\blacksquare_{n}^{\mathbb{H}}$ (three times) → $\blacksquare_{n}^{\mathbb{H}}$ (once) $\uparrow \supset J J J J J$ is entered.
- 2 Press 🖾 (Kana)

The conversion candidates of the roman characters and katakana are displayed.

- By pressing (Kana)/ ☑ (Num.), you can switch between roman character/katakana conversion and number conversion.
- **3** Press \bigcirc \rightarrow Use \bigcirc to select TOM (single-byte) \rightarrow

TOM (single-byte) is determined.

Tip

When you want to enter date and time, you can do so in double-byte kana (kanji conversion) input mode. For example, if you enter あかさわ by pressing 「多屋最高」 and then press 「(Num.), 12/30 or 12:30 are displayed.

Displaying Characters in Opposite Order

In all the input modes except numeric, you can display unconverted characters on the cursor in the opposite order from the one on the Key assignments chart (page 3-3) by pressing 📳.

Example: Entering the character assigned to 2.2

Press ≥.tc

Press 🖾 after pressing 💷

<u>~</u> か → き → く → け → こ <u> →</u> か → こ → け → く → き <u> </u>

Symbols

Double-byte and single-byte symbols can be entered.

1 In a text entry window, press ###
The double-byte symbol list is displayed.

2 Select a symbol→

The selected symbol is entered and the symbol list disappears.

 To enter symbols continuously from the symbol window, select symbols and press ☒.

Tip

 Symbols that you have selected before are displayed in the log area at the top of the symbol window. You can enter symbols by selecting from the log area, too.

Alphanumerics

1 In a text entry window, press #20 (twice)

The double-byte alphanumeric list is displayed.

 The number of times is pressed differs depending on the function.

2 Select a number or letter→

Repeat to enter another letter.

Pictographs

See page 21-14 for information about the pictographs that can be entered.

1 In a text entry window, press 📲

The pictograph list is displayed.

• You may be unable to enter pictographs depending on the function.

2 Select a pictograph→

■

The selected pictograph is entered and the pictograph list disappears.

● To enter pictographs continuously from the pictograph window, select pictographs and press 🖫.

Tip

- Pictographs that you have selected before are displayed in the log area at the top of the pictograph window. You can enter pictographs by selecting from the log area, too.
- When you convert by pressing , pictographs may appear in the list of conversion predictions.

Emoticons

1 In a text entry window, press ★ (twice)

The emoticon list is displayed.

◆ The number of times ★★ is pressed differs depending on the function.

2 Select an emoticon→

The selected emoticon is entered and the emoticon list disappears.

Tip

- When you enter かお and convert it by pressing Q , twelve different emoticons appear in the list of conversion predictions.

Space

1 In a text entry window, press 🕒

A space is entered.

 To enter spaces before converted character, select spaces from the symbol window (page 3-7).

Line Break

- 1 In a text entry window, enter text and convert
- **2** Press 😱 to insert a line break

" appears and cursor starts a new line.

- To insert a line break after text has been converted, access line break from symbols window (page 3-7).
- Line break unavailable in some text entry windows.

Mail & Web Extensions

Enter part of an email address and URL easily using the address library. Example: Entering .co.jp, which is part of an email address

- **1** In a text entry window, press ♠ URL → ■
 The address library is displayed.
- 2 Select $.co.jp \rightarrow \bullet$. .co.jp is entered.

Beeper Mode

Switch the input method (page 3-16) to Beeper mode. When entering text, enter two digits to make one character. The combinations are as follows:

		Press next									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
	1	あ	い	う	え	お	Α	В	С	D	Е
	2	か	き	<	け	2	F	G	Н	-	J
	3	さ	U	す	t	そ	Κ	L	М	Ν	0
ي ا	4	た	ち	つ	て	٢	Р	Q	R	S	Т
i i	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	Χ	Υ
Press first	6	は	ひ	131	^	ほ	Z	?	į.	_	/
-	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&			
	8	ゃ	(ゆ)	ょ	X	#			
	9	5	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	h	"	۰	6	7	8	9	0

- indicates upper and lower case are available. Press ### to switch immediately after character entry.
- When you enter "♠" and "♠", all the characters will be single-byte.
- When you enter "♠", "♠", "♠" and "♣", hiragana will turn to katakana.
- When you enter "♠" and "♠", the characters will be in lower case.

3

1 In a text entry window, press ₽₽₽₽→ ₽₽₽₽→

よしお is determined.

Text Conversion Functions

The handset is equipped with MobileRUPO, Toshiba's kana-kanji conversion engine. MobileRUPO uses AI conversion, which predicts appropriate kanji from context (for example, 本を買う and 犬を飼う) and converts accordingly. Also, by using word predictions (below), you can enter a long mail message in a short time. If you save a kanji with an exceptional reading or



* MobileRUPO is a trademark of Toshiba Corporation.

frequently used abbreviations to the user dictionary (page 3-12), you can call them up the next time you enter text.

Using Word Predictions

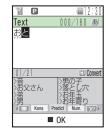
There are two kinds of word predictions, conversion predictions and phrase predictions. Conversion predictions display the list of conversion predictions based on characters entered in double-byte kana (kanji conversion) input mode. Phrase predictions learn phrases from entered paragraphs so that the next time you enter the first part of the phrase, the list of conversion predictions for the following phrase is displayed. By using word predictions, you can enter target phrases easily and quickly.

The more you use word predictions, the more they improve as a predictive dictionary. And the accuracy of conversion predictions will improve. You can also disable word predictions or reset the predictive dictionary to the initial state (page 3-16).

Conversion Prediction

Example: Entering お父さん

The conversion candidates predicted from おと are displayed in the Predict area.



2 Press ♀→Use • to select お父さん→ •

お父さん is determined.

Phrase Prediction

Example: Entering the same phrase 渋谷でライブ that you have entered before

- **1** In a text entry window, enter レ 渋谷 is displayed in the Predict area.
- **2** Press ♀→Use ❖ to select #谷→●

渋谷 is determined. で is displayed in the Predict area.



3 Press ♀→Use ♣ to select *で*

 \overline{C} is determined. $\overline{S} + \overline{J}$ is displayed in the Predict area.



4 Press ・ Use • to select ライブ→ ■

ライブ is determined.

Adding a Word to the User Dictionary

The user dictionary lets you save kanji with an exceptional reading or frequently used abbreviations up to 100 entries. To use words saved in the user dictionary, enter a reading that you saved and convert in a text entry window.

1 In a text entry window, press ☑ (Menu)→

Customize→ ■→Word List→ ■→To Word List

→ ■

2 Select $Word \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter the word \rightarrow \blacksquare$

- You can enter up to 12 characters.
- Symbols and pictographs can also be registered.

3 Select $Reading \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter the reading \rightarrow \blacksquare$

- You can enter up to eight characters.
- Enter the reading in double-byte hiragana.
- 4 Press **№** (OK)

Tip

• You can save up to four entries with the same reading.

Saving to User Dictionary during Text Entry

- 1 In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→醤 (Range·paste)
- 2 Select *Start*→ → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range →
 - You can enter up to 12 characters.
 - Symbols and pictographs can also be registered.
- **3** Select *To Word List*→

A window appears where you can save the selected words to the user dictionary.

- **4** Select $Reading \rightarrow \bullet$ **•** Enter the reading $\rightarrow \bullet$
- **5** Press **№** (OK)

Editing Saved Words

- 1 In a text entry window, press $\[\]$ (Menu) $\] \rightarrow Customize \rightarrow \[\] \rightarrow Word \ List \rightarrow \[\] \rightarrow Edit \ Word \rightarrow \[\] \bigcirc$
- 2 Select a word→窗 (Edit)→Select the word/reading→■ →Edit the word/reading→■
- **3** Press **№** (OK)

Editing Text

Text being entered in a text entry window can be edited. Text data saved on the clipboard (right) can be pasted in a text entry window.

Editing Entered Text

1 In a text entry window, move the cursor to the left of the character you want to delete→ [2006]

The character to the right of the cursor is deleted.

- To delete all the characters to the right of the cursor, press and hold
 [707]
- **2** Enter a correct character

aiT

- When proved is pressed when the cursor is at the end of a line of text, the
 last character is deleted. At this time, press and hold proved to delete all
 text

Copy/Cut/Paste

The clipboard is useful for text editing. Copied or cut words can temporarily be saved to the clipboard. The clipboard lets you copy or cut selected words or pictographs and paste them at the cursor position in a text entry window.

- In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range·paste)
- 2 Select Start → → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ■
- **3** Select $Cut|Copy \rightarrow \bullet$

The selected range of the characters are stored on the clipboard.

4 Position the cursor→ (Range · paste) → Paste → Select the item from the clipboard → ■

Tip

- Up to 20 of the most recent items can be saved to the clipboard.

During text input, you can undo operations.

In a text entry window, press [v] (Menu) $\rightarrow Undo \rightarrow \bullet$

Note

• You cannot undo converted (page 3-15) or replaced (page 3-15) text.

Insert

Select information from Notepad (page 13-19) or Phone Book (page 4-2) and insert it during text entry. You can also insert a signature (page 15-23) in an S! Mail or SMS message.

1 In a text entry window, press $\boxed{}$ (Menu) \rightarrow *Insert* \rightarrow

2 Select an item to be quoted

Phone Book

Select *Phone Book* → ■ → Select a Phone Book entry → ■ → Select an item → ■

Information Saved to My Details

Select $My \ Details \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select an item $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Phrases

Select *Phrases*→ ■ → Select a phrase→ ■

Emoticon

Select $Emoticon \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select a category of the emoticon $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select an emoticon $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$

Signature in an S! Mail/SMS

Select Signature $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow Signature 1/Signature $2 \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Notepad

Select *Notepad*→ ■ → Select a notepad → ■

Message

Select $Message\ Box \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select\ a\ folder \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select\ a$ message $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

URL History

Select $URL\ History \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select a URL $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

Note

• Some items may not be inserted depending on the operating situation.

Additional Functions

Saving to Notepad

Save selected text in a text entry window to Notepad (page 13-19).

In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range · paste)

Select Start → ■ → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ■

3 Select $To Notepad \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a notepad \rightarrow \blacksquare$

 If you save to a Notepad with a saved entry, it will be overwritten with the new entry.

Saving to Phone Book

Save a selected phone number or email address in a text entry window to Phone Book. If a selected item is just numbers, it will be saved to **Phone Number**, and if it is single-byte alphanumerics, hyphens, or underbars containing a single "@", it will be saved to **Email**.

• For details on saving a Phone Book entry, see page 4-2.

- 1 In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range · paste)
- 2 Select Start → → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ■
- **3** Select To Phone Book $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Add \ NewlAdd \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Note

 If a selected item contains characters or symbols that cannot be saved to Phone Book, it won't be saved to Phone Book.

Tip

 Even if selected numbers contain "\#\/P-+()" in between, they will be recognized as a telephone number. However, "/()" will be omitted when they are saved.

Replacing Previously Converted Text

Select previously converted text and replace it. However, kanji and pictographs cannot be replaced collectively.

- 1 In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range · paste)
- 2 Select Start→ ■→Move the cursor to the last character of the text range→ ■
- **3** Select *Convert*→

Converting Hiragana to Kanji

Select $Kana/Kanji \rightarrow \blacksquare$ \rightarrow Select the conversion candidates $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Convert All into Full Width

Select *Full Width*→

Convert All into Half Width

Select *Half Width*→

Convert All into Upper Case

Select *Upper Case*→

Convert All into Lower Case

Select *Lower Case*→

Replacing Text with Text Saved to the Clipboard

Replace selected text with text saved to the clipboard (page 3-13).

- In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range · paste)
- 2 Select Start→ → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ●
- 3 Select *Replace*→ ■→Select a character to replace from the clipboard → ■

Deleting

- 1 In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range·paste)
- 2 Select Start → → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ■
- **3** Select *Delete*→

Resetting a Prediction Dictionary/Conversion Dictionary

Reset what the dictionaries learned in Word Predictions (page 3-10) to the initial state.

1 In a text entry window, press ☑ (Menu)→

Customize→ □ → Reset Learned→ □

2 Select $Prediction|Conversion \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Setting Word Predictions

Set whether to use Word Predictions (page 3-10) or not.

1 In a text entry window, press ☑ (Menu)→

Customize→ ■→Prediction→ ■→Predict Textl

Phrase→ ■

2 Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the Input Method

Select input method for entering text from Standard mode, Beeper mode (page 3-9), T9 mode and Multi-tap mode.

- T9 mode: Each press of a key narrows down word predictions. Select from the predictions list.
- Multi-tap mode: Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Each press
 of the key cycles through the characters assigned to that key.
- 1 In a text entry window, press ☑ (Menu)→

 Customize→ →Input Method→ ■

2 Select Standard|Beeper|T9|Multi-tap→

■

Changing the Font Size

The font size displayed in a text entry window can be changed.

- **1** In a text entry window, press ☑ (Menu)→
 Customize→ ■→Font Size→ ■
- **2** Select a font size→

Custom Window

Save frequently used symbols and pictographs to the custom window and enter them from there easily.

- 1 In a text entry window, press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow Customize \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Custom Window \rightarrow \bigcirc
- 2 Select Add to Window → → Enter symbols and pictographs → ■

 Setting Display of the Custom Window | Select Display → → Display/Do not Display → ■

Creating Original Emoticons

- In a text entry window, press →(^-^)→ →

 User Created→ ■
- 2 Select the item not registered→窗 (Edit)→Create an emoticon→ (twice)

Saving to Phone Book	4-2
Adding a New Entry	4-3
Setting a Picture	4-3
Setting Ringtone & Other Options	4-4
Setting Location Information	4-5
Setting Other Information	4-5
Adding an Entry from Call Log	4-6
Checking the Number of Phone Book Entries	4-6
Setting Groups	4-7
Group Names and Icons	4-7
Group Options	4-7
Using Phone Book	
Switching Phone Books	4-9
Phone Book Search Modes	4-9
Changing the Order of Phone Book Entries	4-10
Copying/Moving Phone Book Entries	4-10
Editing Phone Book Entries	
Deleting Phone Book Entries	4-11
Owner Information	
Adding Information	4-11
Using Your Location Information	4-12
Using Speed Calling to Make Calls	4-12
Setting Phone Book	
Setting the Default Storage Place	4-13
Prohibiting Use of Phone Book	4-13
S! Address Book	
Synchronizing Phone Book	4-15
Synchronization Settings	4-15
Checking Synchronization Log	4-16

Saving to Phone Book

Your handset can save up to 1,000 Phone Book entries. You can also save Phone Book entries to the USIM card and a memory card. The maximum number of entries you can save depends on the capacity of the USIM card or memory card.

Back-up Important Information

When the battery pack is exhausted or removed for long periods, Phone Book entries may be lost. Handset damage may also affect handset information recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost or altered data.

		Supported/Not Supported			
Item	Description	Phone Memory	Memory Card	USIM Card	
Name/ Last Name	Enter up to 16 characters. (Select	0			
Name/ First Name	Name when saving to USIM card.)				
Reading- Last	Enter up to 16 characters. (Select Reading when saving to USIM	0	0		
Reading- First	card.)				
Memory Number	A four-digit number (Entry Number)	0	0	0	
Phone Number	Enter up to five numbers on Phone Memory/one on USIM card (32 digits each).	0	0	0	

		Supported/Not Supported			
Item	Description	Phone Memory	Memory Card	USIM Card	
Email	Enter up to five addresses on Phone Memory (128 single-byte alphanumerics each) / one on USIM card (60 single-byte alphanumerics).	0	0	0	
Address	Enter postal code (20 characters), country name (32 characters), state/province (64 characters), city name (64 characters) and street name/number (64 characters).	0	0	I	
Job Title	Enter up to 32 characters.	0	0	_	
Company	Enter up to 32 characters.	0	0	ı	
Birthday	Enter birth date.	0	0	-	
URL	Enter up to 128 bytes.	0	0	ı	
Group	Entries can be sorted into groups.	0	0	0	
Picture	Set an image to appear for incoming calls/messages.	0	_		
Options	Set external light, ringtone, secret setting, etc. individually for each Phone Book entry.	0	_	ı	
Location	Set and display location information.	0	_		
Note	Enter up to 256 characters.	0	_	_	

Adding a New Entry

Enter a name, phone number and email address. Storage place of Phone Book entries can be specified beforehand (page 4-13).

Main menu P

Phone Book

1 Select $Add New \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Entering a Name

Select *Name* → • • Last *Name/First Name* → • Enter a Last Name/First Name → • (OK)

 Characters entered for name (reading for kanji) appear. To correct reading, select Reading-Last/Reading-First.

Entering Phone Numbers

Select *Phone Number* → ■ → Enter a phone number → ■ → Select a phone number type → ■

● To enter a manual hyphen "-" or a pause "P" (page 13-46), press
☐ (Menu) while entering a phone number and select *Manual*Hyphen/Pause(P).

Entering Email Addresses

Select $Email \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare$ Enter an email address $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \blacksquare$ Select an email type $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

2 Press (OK)

Note

 When you save to USIM Phone Book (page 4-13), enter both the first name and last name in the *Name* field.

aiT

- You can also save a new entry in the following method:
 In Standby, press □ → ☒ (Create)
- To save the entry, the Name, Phone Number or Email needs to be set.
- If the same name as you enter has already been saved in the existing Phone Book, pressing (OK) displays a message asking whether to overwrite the name. Select NO to save as a new entry.

Setting a Picture

Main menu Phone Book

1 Select $Add New \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Capturing New Image

Select *Picture* → ■ → *Take Picture* → ■ → Take a picture → ■

• For details on taking pictures, see page 6-7.

Selecting from Data Folder

Select Picture
ightharpoonup
ightharpoonup Phone Memory/Memory Card
ightharpoonup Pictures/Digital Camera
ightharpoonup Select a picture
ightharpoonup
ightharpoonup

• If the selected picture is too large, change the size (page 6-22).

2 Press (OK)

To save the entry, the Name, Phone Number or Email needs to be set.

Note

 If Property (page 9-9) is not available for forwarding, the picture file cannot be saved as Picture.

Setting Ringtone & Other Options

Main menu

Phone Book

1 Select $Add New \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Options \rightarrow \bigcirc$

External Light

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification→

■→ExternalLight→ ■→Select a color/OFF/Same as Phone

→ ■

Ringtone Volume

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification \rightarrow Ringtone Vol. \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Options/Same as Phone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Adjust the volume \rightarrow \blacksquare

Ringtone Pattern

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification
→ ■ → Ringtone → ■ → Patterns/Melodies/Phone Memory/
Memory Card/Same as Phone → ■ → Select a pattern → ■

Vibration Pattern

Select *Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification*→

→ *Vibration*→ → Select a pattern/*Link to Sound/OFF/Same as Phone*→ ■

Ring Duration for Incoming Messages and Hot Status Notifications

Select $Message/Notification \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Duration \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Set$ $Duration/1 \ Cycle/Same \ as \ Phone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \triangle$ Enter the ringing time $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

Save Location for Incoming Messages

Select $Message \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow MessageFolder \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select a folder/ $None \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Secret Setting

Select $Secret \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

 To set an entry as a Secret entry, choose ON. To view Secret entries, switch Secret Mode (page 12-6) to Show. " indicates Secret entry.

Displaying Name on External Display

Select *Ext. Display* \longrightarrow *ON/OFF/Same as Phone* \longrightarrow \bigcirc

Press 🖫 (OK)

 Name, Phone Number or Email field must be entered to save the entry.

Note

 When handset is open, incoming-call ringtone sounds at Level 3 if Ringtone Volume is set to Ascending Volume, Descending Volume, Level 4 or Level 5.

Tip

- If you select Same as Phone, the sound/vibration settings will be the same as the corresponding settings of Sounds (page 11-4). The external light setting will be the same as the corresponding settings of External Light (page 11-11).
- When you make a call to a party with Secret set to ON and Secret Mode (page 12-6) is set to Hide, only the phone number is recorded in Dialed Calls.
- When you receive a call from a party with Secret set to ON and Secret Mode is set to Hide, only the phone number is displayed.

Setting Location Information

Main menu

Phone Book

Select $Add New \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Personal Info. \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow No$

Location→ •

Selecting from Location Memos

Select *List Location* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select location information \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow 図 (OK)

Selecting from Picture File

Select My *Pictures* $\rightarrow \square$ \rightarrow Select a file with location information \rightarrow (OK) → 🖾

Press 🖾 (OK)

● To save the entry, the *Name*, *Phone Number* or *Email* needs to be set.

Setting Other Information

Main menu

Phone Book

Select Add New \rightarrow

Address/Job Title/Company

Select **Personal Info.** \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow Enter information→ □ → ☒ (OK)

Birthday

Select **Personal Info.** \rightarrow **Birthday** \rightarrow Enter the date \rightarrow ■ → □ (OK)

• Enter four digits for the year and if the month or date is a single digit prefix it with a 0.

Select **Personal Info.** $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow URL \rightarrow \square \rightarrow \square$ Enter a URL $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow$ select a type→ ■ → 🖾 (OK)

Group

Select No Group $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \text{Select a group} \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Note

URL

Select $Note \rightarrow [\bullet] \rightarrow Enter a reminder \rightarrow [\bullet]$

Memory Number (Entry Number)

Select the current Entry Number → ■ → Enter a new Entry Number \rightarrow

Press 🖫 (OK)

• To save the entry, the *Name*, *Phone Number* or *Email* needs to be set.

Tip

If Storage Place (page 4-13) is set to *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*, you can select a group from groups saved in Phone Memory. If it is set to *USIM*, you can select a group from groups saved in USIM.

Adding an Entry from Call Log

Main menu Phone Book ► Call Log

Select a phone number $\rightarrow \boxed{v}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow To\ Phone$ $Book \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet} \rightarrow Add\ New \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$

 To add the phone number to an existing Phone Book entry, select Add and select the entry.

Tip

- You can add a phone number or email address from the received messages.
- After entering a phone number, you can also press to add the phone number.
- In Standby, you can also display Call Log by pressing or or •.

Checking the Number of Phone Book Entries

 When Secret Mode (page 12-6) is set to *Hide*, the number of entries other than those with Secret set to *ON* is displayed.

Main Phone Book

- **1** Select *Memory Status*→

Setting Groups

Set the group name and icon. For each group, the external light, ringtone volume, ringtone pattern and vibration for incoming calls/messages can be set. However priority is given to the setting of each Phone Book entry.

Group Names and Icons

Main Phone Book Group

- **1** Select a group→
 - Press (Menu) and select To USIM or To Phone to switch between the Phone Memory and the USIM.
- 2 Select the Group Name field→ → Enter a group name → ●
- **3** Select a group icon→
- 4 Press 🖾 (OK)

Tip

Group Options

Main Phone Book Group

- Select a group→ ■
- **2** Select *Options*→

External Light

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification \rightarrow ExternalLight \rightarrow Select a color/OFF/Same as Phone \rightarrow

Ringtone Volume

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification \rightarrow Ringtone Vol. \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Options/Same as Phone \rightarrow \bigcirc Adjust the volume \rightarrow \bigcirc

Ringtone Pattern

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification→

→ Ringtone→ → Patterns/Melodies/Phone Memory/

Memory Card/Same as Phone→ → Select a pattern→ →

Vibration Pattern

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification \rightarrow Vibration \rightarrow Select a pattern/Link to Sound/OFF/Same as Phone \rightarrow

Ring Time for Incoming Messages/Hot Status Notifications Select $Message/Notification \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Duration \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Set$ $Duration/1 \ Cycle/Same \ as \ Phone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter \ the \ ringing \ time \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

Folder for Saving Incoming Messages

Select $Message \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow MessageFolder \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select a folder/ $None \rightarrow \blacksquare$

3 Press ☒ (OK)

Tip

 While selecting a group, press (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the group, some items may not appear):

Reset/To USIM/To Phone

- Hot Status Notification settings unavailable in USIM Phone Book.
- If you select *Same as Phone*, the sound/vibration settings will be the same as the corresponding settings of Sounds (page 11-4). The external light setting will be the same as the corresponding settings of External Light (page 11-11).

Note

 When handset is open, incoming-call ringtone sounds at Level 3 if Ringtone Volume is set to Ascending Volume, Descending Volume, Level 4 or Level 5.

Using Phone Book

1 In Standby, press 😱

 Press o or o to display the previous or next row of the Japanese syllabary.

2 Select an entry→

 Press or or to display the previous or next entry of the same row.

Making a Call

Select a phone number→

Sending an S! Mail or SMS Message

Select a phone number/email address→¬¬ (Menu)→As Mail→¬

- For details on creating S! Mail, see page 15-5.
- For details on creating SMS, see page 15-10.

Tip

- In Standby, press and hold O.P. to Same to display the search window of the row assigned to each dial key.
- When Secret Mode (page 12-6) is set to Show, an entry with Secret (page 4-4) set to ON is displayed. " appears for the entry.
- The current status (Hot Status information) is displayed for Phone Book entries that are saved to Hot Status Members List (page 18-5).
- If the Navigation Key settings (page 11-12) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- You can also select *Phone Book* from the Main menu to display Phone Book entries.

Tip

 After displaying Phone Book entries, press (Menu) to perform the following:

Call/Intl. Calls/Search Mode/Delete/Export/Send vCard/Copy/ Move/Change View/Sort by/Hot Status/Active Window

 After displaying Phone Book entries, you can also select an entry and press to make a call. If the entry contains more than one phone number, a call is made to the first phone number.

Switching Phone Books

Switch between *Phone/USIM*, *Phone Memory*, *USIM* and *Memory Card* Phone Books.

- Phone Memory Phone Book
- USIM Phone Book
- Memory Card Phone Book
- 1 In Standby, press 📮
- 2 Press ☑ (Menu)→Change View→ → Select a storage place→ ■

Phone Book Search Modes

Select one of the six search modes. The selected search mode is used the next time you open Phone Book.

- 1 In Standby, press 😱
- **2** Press \mathbf{w} (Menu) \rightarrow Search Mode \rightarrow $\mathbf{\bullet}$

By Displaying the List of Phone Book Entries (Default)
Select List View→ → Select an entry→ →

By Entering the First Character of a Reading in 1-touch (*2タッチ検索* (2-touch), if *言語選択* (Language) (page 11-12) is set to *日本語* (Japanese))

Select By 1-Touch \longrightarrow Press a key from \bigcirc to \bigcirc to \bigcirc , \bigstar , or \bigstar

By Entering a Reading

Select By $Reading \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$ a reading $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$ an entry $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

By Entering a Memory Number (Entry Number)

Select $By Memory No. \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$ an Entry Number $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select an entry \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Select an entry \rightarrow Select$

By Entering a Phone Number

Select $By \ Phone \ No. \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter \ a \ phone \ number \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select \ an \ entry \rightarrow \blacksquare$

By Selecting a Group

Select $Group\ Filter \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select\ a\ group \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select\ an\ entry$

Tip

The keypad assignment used in 2タッチ検索 is as follows. For example, press 国記 写影 to display the entries with reading starting from よ. To display roman characters, press 玉田. To display other characters, press 田田.

		Press next					
		1	2	3	4	5	
	1	あ	い	う	え	お	
	2	か	き	<	け	2	
	3	さ	U	す	せ	そ	
st	4	た	ち	つ	て	ک	
Press first	5	な	(こ	ぬ	ね	の	
ess.	6	は	ひ	131	<	ほ	
<u>-</u>	7	ま	み	む	め	も	
	8	や		ゆ	_	よ	
	9	5	り	る	れ	ろ	
	0	わ	を	h			

 The characters in the Reading field of Phone Book are used to search an entry in 2 タッチ検索.

Changing the Order of Phone Book Entries

- **1** In Standby, press \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow *Sort by* \rightarrow \bigcirc
- **2** Select *Alphabet*|*Birthday* \rightarrow

Copying/Moving Phone Book Entries

Copy or move entries between Phone Memory, Memory Card and USIM Phone Books.

1 In Standby, press 😱

Copying/Moving One Entry

Select an entry $\rightarrow \square$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Copy/Move \rightarrow \square \rightarrow One \rightarrow \square$

Copying/Moving Multiple Entries

Press ☑ (Menu)→*Copy/Move*→ ■ →*Select Multi*→ ■ →Select entries → ■ → ☑ (Copy) / ☑ (Move)

Copying/Moving All Entries

Press [x] (Menu) $\rightarrow Copy/Move \rightarrow [a] \rightarrow All \rightarrow [a]$

2 Select *Phone Memory|USIM|Memory Card*→

■

Note

 The items you can save to Phone Book differ depending on the Phone Memory, Memory Card or USIM Phone Book (page 4-2).

Tip

 While selecting multiple entries, press (Menu) to perform the following:

View/Mark All/Unmark All

Editing Phone Book Entries

Edit and delete entries in Phone Book.

- 1 In Standby, press 😱
- **2** Select an entry→ •
- **3** Select an item→ → Edit an item→ •
- 4 Press ᠍ (OK)→Save/Save as New→

 ■

Tip

- If the Navigation Key settings (page 11-12) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- While selecting an item of the entry, press
 \(\overline{\text{\psi}} \) (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the item, some items may not appear):
 \(Edit(Call/As Mail/Intl. Calls/Hide My ID/Show My ID/Hot Status/Change Type/Clear Field/Change Pic./Remove Pic./File Name

Deleting Phone Book Entries

1 In Standby, press 😱

Deleting One Entry

Select an entry \rightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow $Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc$ \longrightarrow $One \rightarrow \bigcirc$ \longrightarrow $YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Deleting Multiple Entries

Press $\[\] \]$ (Menu) \rightarrow **Delete** \rightarrow $\[\] \rightarrow$ **Select Multi** \rightarrow $\[\] \rightarrow$ Select entries \rightarrow $\[\] \rightarrow$ $\[\] \] (Delete) <math>\rightarrow$ **YES** \rightarrow $\[\] \bigcirc$

Deleting All Entries

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow **Delete** \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow **AII** \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc Enter your security code (page 1-22) \rightarrow **YES** \rightarrow \bigcirc

Owner Information

Save your own information to *My Details*. Your name, reading, five phone numbers, five email addresses, picture, address, birthday and location information can be saved. Also, check saved information during a call (page 2-11) or insert it into a message.

Adding Information

1 Select an item $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Edit \rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow Enter information $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

Setting Your Name

Select $Name \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \boxdot$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Edit \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$ your name $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (OK)

2 Press 🖾 (OK)

Tip

- For details on setting items see page 4-3.
- If you press (Send) in Step 1, you can send your own phone number by S! Mail, infrared communication.

Using Your Location Information

Main menu Ph

Phone Book

My Details

Select Personal Info.→ ■ → Location Exist→

[v] (Menu)

If you have not set location information, select No Location.

Checking the Map from Location Information

Select *Open Map*→ ■ → Browser opens and map appears

Sending Location Information by S! Mail

Select *Location Mail*→ ■ → Create a message

Editing Location Information

Select *Add Location* → ■ **Deleting Location Information**

Select **Delete**→

Tip

 If you have not set location information, you can only select Add Location

Using Speed Calling to Make Calls

Enter the last two digits of the Memory Number (Entry Number) 0000 to 0099 of Phone Memory Phone Book and press 🗂 to make calls.

1 In Standby, enter the last two digits of the Entry Number→ ▶

A call is made to the party specified by the Entry Number.

Tip

- When the Entry Number is 0000 to 0009, enter the last single digit only and press .
- If Phone Book entry contains more than one phone number, a call is made to the first phone number.

Setting Phone Book

Setting the Default Storage Place

Preset the default storage place for new Phone Book entries.

- **1** Select Select Storage→

 ■
- 2 Select Always Ask|Phone Memory|USIM|Memory Card →
 - If you want to set the storage place every time you save an entry, select Always Ask.

Prohibiting Use of Phone Book

Main menu Phone Book Settings

- **1** Select *Phone Book Lock*→ ■
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **3** Select $Lock \rightarrow \blacksquare$
 - If you want to use Phone Book, enter your security code to temporarily cancel Phone Book Lock.

Note

 If Phone Book Lock is set to Lock, speed calling (page 4-12) cannot be used to make calls.

S! Address Book

Use S! Address Book to save and manage the handset's Phone Book on the network server.

The following functions are available for S! Address Book.

Function	Description			
Backup (Synchronization)	Back up Phone Book to the server from the handset. Select manual or automatic synchronization (page 4-15).			
Reload (Synchronization)	Reload Phone Book on the server to the handset. Select from the three reloading methods (page 4-16).			
Editing*	Edit Phone Book on the server from the PC.			
Import/Export*	Download Phone Book on the server to the PC and upload Phone Book in the PC to the server.			
Birthday Notification*	If the server's Phone Book has the birthday information, receive an SMS message from the server notifying you of people's birthdays.			
Email Address Notification*	Inform friends of your new email address by sending a notice to multiple addresses.			

^{*} For details, see the website below (as of May, 2007). http://www.softbank.jp/SAB

About Subscription

- A separate subscription is required to use the S! Address Book service. For details, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).
- You will be sent a user ID and password notification mail (SMS) after your S!
 Address Book application is complete. If you do not receive a user ID and
 password notification mail, contact SoftBank General Information
 (page 21-36).
- A monthly subscription fee is required to use this service.
- In case you replace your handset, the compatibility with a new model is as follows:
 - 3G series (compatible with S! Address Book): Phone Book stored on the server is retained, and you can use it from your new handset.
 - 3G series (not compatible with S! Address Book): The service of S! Address Book continues and Phone Book on the server is retained. However, you cannot access to Phone Book from your new handset (you can access from a PC).
 - V3, V4, V5, V6, and V8 series: S! Address Book is canceled automatically, and Phone Book on the server is deleted.
- When you cancel S! Address Book, Phone Book on the server is deleted.

Operating Precautions

- If you forget your password, perform the following: In Standby, press 🗹 → 設定・申込 →利用状況の確認
 - · Follow the onscreen instructions.
- Try again if synchronization failed due to poor reception or a low battery.
 Synchronization may have taken place with Synchronize regardless of the synchronization type setting.
- If you synchronize Phone Book with the synchronization type of Synchronize, From Client, or Backup after deleting all the entries on Phone Book on your handset, Phone Book on the server is deleted. If you synchronize Phone Book with the synchronization type of Synchronize, From Server, or Restore after deleting all the entries in Phone Book on the server, Phone Book on your handset is deleted.
- Of Phone Book items, *Picture* and *Personal Info*. are exempted from synchronization. These items set in the handset are all deleted if you synchronize in *Restore* type.
- SoftBank is not liable for any loss of information in Phone Book on the handset and the server due to cancellation of the service or errors during synchronization.
- In order to maintain consistency between Phone Book on your handset and the server, we recommend that you synchronize Phone Book regularly.
 It may take time to synchronize after you carry out a lot of editing (modification, addition, deletion, etc.) on Phone Book on your handset or the server.

Synchronizing Phone Book

Main menu ▶ Phone Book ▶ S! Addr. Book ▶ Start Sync

1 Select *Start*→ ■ → Enter your security code (page 1-22)

Follow the onscreen instructions.

Note

 Upon starting synchronization, your handset is connected to the Internet. A communication fee is charged during Internet connection. Ending synchronization terminates the connection automatically.

Tip

- When synchronizing for the first time, Synchronize is used regardless
 of the synchronization type setting (page 4-16).
- The synchronization type you set first is used until you change it. **Synchronize** is set by default.

Synchronization Settings

Automatic Synchronization

Select from manual and automatic synchronization. If you select automatic mode, synchronization is performed at fixed intervals.

- **1** Select $Auto\ Sync \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$
 - When you select ON, set time interval to synchronize. Enter your security code (page 1-22) and select from Daily, Weekly and Monthly and then set the time for Daily, day of the week and time for Weekly, or date and time for Monthly.
- **2** Press ☐ (Save)

Tip

 The synchronization type is set to the same type for manual and automatic synchronization. The synchronization type you set first is used until you change it. Synchronize is set by default.

Synchronization Type

Select from the following types.

Туре	Description	Note
Synchronize	Back up any changes to the information in the handset's Phone Book to the server and download any new information in the server's Phone Book to the handset simultaneously.	If information in the same field in both the handset and on the server has been changed, the information on the server takes priority.
From Client	Back up changes to the information in the handset's Phone Book to the server.	Changes to the information in the server's Phone Book are not reflected to the handset.
From Server	Upload changes to the information in the server's Phone Book to the handset.	Changes to the information in the handset's Phone Book are not reflected to the server.
Backup	Delete the existing Phone Book data on the server and back up all Phone Book data in the handset to the server.	All the information in the server's Phone Book is deleted.
Restore	Delete the existing Phone Book data in the handset and reload all Phone Book data on the server to the handset.	All the information in the handset's Phone Book is deleted. All items exempt from synchronization (page 4-14) will not be uploaded.



1 Select Sync Type→ → Select a synchronization type→ → → (Save)

Checking Synchronization Log

Display the synchronization log.



1 Select the synchronization log→

About Video Calls	5-2
Indicators	5-2
Making a Video Call	5-2
Answering a Video Call	5-3
Engaged Video Call Operations	
Adjusting Speaker Volume	5-3
Muting Microphone	5-3
Switching between Earpiece & Speaker	5-3
Using Zoom	5-4
Switching between Main Camera and Sub Camera	5-4
Switching Image Windows	5-4
Changing Image Quality	5-4
Changing Alternative Image	5-4
Sending a Picture	5-5
Video Call Settings	5-5
Alternative Image	5-5
Self-view Confirmation	5-5
Image Quality	5-5
Auto Answer	5-5
Mute	5-6
Speaker	5-6
Setting Hold Image	5-6

5

About Video Calls

Make video calls with another party. The other party must use a video call compatible handset.

- Handset complies with the 3G-324M international standard for 3G mobile videophones.
- If speaker (Loud Speaker, page 5-6) is set to ON, speaker volume is level 3.
 If sound is switched to Earpiece and back to Speaker during a call, sound level is heard at the user-set volume. Volume level can be changed during calls (page 5-3).

Indicators

In Video Call.

₽ Video Call

Switch Menu

Mute My Voice

Mute All

Faster Moving Mode

Standard Mode

🛅 Better Picture Mode

4) Handsfree ON

💹 Image Transfer OFF

🍇 Sending Picture

Voice Connection Established

■ Video Connection Established

Making a Video Call

While you are making a video call, pictures being taken by the camera will be sent over to the other party. You can also select to send a still image instead of pictures now being taken. You may want to switch between the Main camera and the Sub camera during a video call.

1 Enter a phone number and press 👺

The video call is made.

• When Self-view (page 5-5) is set as ON, confirm an image of yourself as a camera image and press ■ to send outgoing image.

2 Press real to end the call

Note

 When Cost Limit (page 2-11) is set and the limit is reached, outgoing calls are blocked. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends.

Tip

- When you make a video call to a device that does not support video calls, a warning message appears and you can make a voice call. When you make a video call to a party who is not in an area with 3G-network coverage, a warning message appears.
- During video calls, press ☑ (Menu) to perform the following:
 End Call/Hold/Mute/Screen Set./Alt. Picture (page 5-4)/Send
 Picture (page 5-5)/Phone Book (page 4-8)/Call Log/My Details

Answering a Video Call

A confirmation window appears. Select **YES** or **NO** and press ot send or block your outgoing image.

- Press (S), while handset is ringing/vibrating to view yourself before sending video image.
- **2** Press re to end the call

Tip

- By pressing , you can also answer an incoming video call.
- You can place an incoming video call on hold (page 2-5).
- You can reject an incoming video call if you press (Menu) and select
 Reject Call when a call is received.
- Besides , and ∰ you can also answer video calls by pressing □□-□□, ★ij or ∰ when Any Key Answer (page 11-13) is set to *ON*.
- You can answer video calls only by opening the handset when Open to Talk (page 11-13) is set to ON.
- If you miss a video call, Information Prompt (page 1-10) appears.
- When you receive a video call from a Phone Book entry, the name appears on the display. If you receive a video call from a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-4) set to *ON* when Secret Mode (page 12-6) is set to *Hide*, however, only the phone number is displayed.
- To adjust the ringtone volume while a video call is being received, use .

Tip

During calls, press (Menu) to perform the following:
 End Call/Hold/Mute/Screen Set./Alt. Picture (page 5-4)/Send
 Picture (page 5-5)/Phone Book (page 4-8)/Call Log/My Details

Engaged Video Call Operations

Adjusting Speaker Volume

1 During a call, use 🕻

Muting Microphone

- **1** During a call, press [v] (Menu) $\rightarrow Mute \rightarrow [\bullet]$
- **2** Select Mute My VoicelMute All→
 - To cancel the mute, press during a call.

Switching between Earpiece & Speaker

Switch between the earpiece and speaker during a call.

1 During a call, press ☒ (♠/魜)

Using Zoom

1 During a call, use •••

Note

Zoom is unavailable while sending a still picture for the outgoing image.

Switching between Main Camera and Sub Camera

1 During a call, press

Switching Image Windows

Switch Outgoing/Incoming Image windows.

1 During a call, press $\boxed{}$ (Menu) \rightarrow Screen Set. \rightarrow

2 Select Switch→

Large Incoming Image/Small Outgoing Image

Select *In. Prior*→

Incoming Image Only

Select *Incoming Only*→

Small Incoming Image/Large Outgoing Image

Select *Out. Prior*→

Outgoing Image Only

Select *Outgoing Only*→

Changing Image Quality

Adjust incoming image quality (page 5-5) during a call.

1 During a call, press \mathbf{v} (Menu) \rightarrow Screen Set. \rightarrow

2 Select *Image Quality*→

3 Select the output format→

Changing Alternative Image

During a call, press \mathbf{v} (Menu) $\rightarrow Alt$. $Picture \rightarrow \mathbf{\bullet}$

2 Select Alt. Pic. $ON \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Selecting from a Preinstalled Image

Select **Preset**→

Selecting an Image from Data Folder/Memory Card

Select **Phone Memory/Memory Card** \longrightarrow Select an image \longrightarrow

Handset automatically adjusts image size.

Tip

 After ending a call, the alternative picture will return to the setting specified in the Alternative Picture setting (page 5-5).

Sending a Picture

- **1** During a call, press [m] (Menu) \rightarrow Send Picture \rightarrow
- **2** Select Send Pic. $ON \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- 3 Select *Phone MemorylMemory Card*→ → Select an image → ■

Video Call Settings

Methods for making and receiving video calls and images to be displayed can be set beforehand.

Alternative Image

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Video Call

- **1** Select *Alt. Picture* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow $ON \rightarrow$ \bigcirc
 - If you select *OFF*, the camera image will be sent out.
 - You can change the alternative picture during a call (page 5-4).

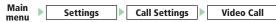
Selecting from a Preinstalled Image

Select **Preset**→ (twice)

Selecting an Image from Data Folder/Memory Card
Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card* → Select an image
→ ■ (twice)

Self-view Confirmation

Confirm the self-view (the image to be sent) by activating the Sub camera automatically before sending out a video call.



1 Select Self-view $\rightarrow \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Image Quality

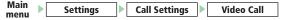
Main Settings Call Settings Video Call

- **1** Select *Image Quality*→
- **2** Select the output format→
 - You can change the image quality during a call (page 5-4).

Auto Answer

When the Auto Answer function for video calls is set to ON, video calls received from phone numbers in the Auto Answer list are answered automatically without having to press a key.

- Regardless of manner mode setting (page 11-2), the speaker will beep and the video call is automatically connected.
- Auto Answer is disabled when the handset is closed.



Select $Auto\ Answer \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ (twice) $\rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Adding Numbers to Auto Answer List

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Video Call

- **1** Select Auto Answer \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Answer List \rightarrow \bigcirc
- 2 Press (Add)→Enter your security code (page 1-22)

Selecting a Phone Number from Phone Book

Select **Phone Book** → ● → Select a Phone Book entry → ● → Select a phone number → ● (twice)

Entering a Phone Number Directly

Select $Phone \ Number \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter \ a \ phone \ number \rightarrow \blacksquare \ (twice)$

Selecting a Phone Number from the Call Log Select $Call Log \rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow Select an entry \rightarrow \bigcirc (twice)

Tin

 To edit/delete a number, press (Menu) from the Answer List window (see Step 1) and choose Edit or Delete.

Mute

Turn off microphone and/or earpiece during video calls.

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Video Call

- **1** Select *Mute*→
- **2** Select Mute My VoicelMute AlllOFF→
 - Mute settings are available during calls (page 5-3).

Speaker

Select Speaker or Earpiece for sound output. Set to *ON* to set for speaker.

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Video Call

- **1** Select *Loud Speaker*→
- **2** Select $ONIOFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting Hold Image

Set the image to be sent out to the other party while placing an incoming call on hold or while holding the call you are making.



1 Select Hold Setting \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Hold on Call|Hold

 $Answer \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Selecting from a Preinstalled Image

Select **Preset**→ (twice)

Selecting an Image from Data Folder/Memory Card

Select **Phone Memory/Memory Card** \rightarrow Select an image \rightarrow (twice)

About the Camera	6-2
Precautions	6-2
Display	6-2
Common Operations on Finder Window	6-5
Pictures	6-6
Camera Modes	6-6
Capturing Still Images	6-7
Using Auto Focus Lock	6-8
Taking a Picture for Phone Book Entry	6-8
Functions for Taking Pictures	6-9
Setting Camera Modes	6-9
Brush Up mode	6-9
Multi Shots	6-9
Frame Setting	6-10
Videos	6-10
Video Modes	6-11
Recording Video	6-11
Deleting a Video	6-12
Setting Video as a Ringtone Pattern	6-12
Functions for Recording Videos	
Setting Video Modes	6-13
Recording a Video without Sound	6-13
Setting the Video Compression Method	6-13
QR Code	
Scanning a QR Code	6-14
Checking Scanned Data	6-14
Using Location Information Contained in a QR Code	6-15
Camera & Video Settings	
Camera Settings	6-15
Video Settings	6-17
Camera & Video Settings	6-18

Preview Setting	6-2
Previewing a Picture	6-21
Previewing a Video	6-21
Send Functions	6-2
Sending via Mail	6-22
Sending via Infrared Communication	6-22
Editing a Picture	6-2
Changing the Picture Size	6-22
Picture Effects	6-23
Adding a Frame	6-23
Adding a Stamp	6-24
Adding Text	6-24
Rotating a Picture	6-25
Compounding Pictures	6-25
Mixing Pictures to Create Wallpaper	6-25

About the Camera

The handset is equipped with a 196 million effective pixel camera that has auto focus and digital zoom. Use the camera to take pictures and record videos, as well as to scan QR codes (page 6-14).

Precautions

- Pictures are saved in JPEG format, and videos in MPEG-4 format.
- To avoid camera shake, hold handset firmly, or use timer.
- Fingerprints or grime may affect focus. Wipe lens with a soft cloth.
- Do not block the lens with your finger or strap when taking pictures/videos.

Display

Using Windows

Finder Window

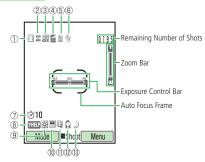
Frame and view images in Finder Window when capturing still images or recording videos.

■Preview Window

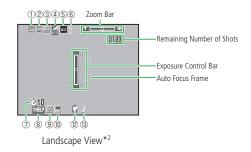
Check captured images/videos.

Note that when shooting with **Digital/Video**, you can only shoot in Landscape View.

Camera Indicators



Finder Window*1



- *1 In case of **Mobile** (page 6-6)
- *2 Landscape View window can be used with **Digital** (page 6-6) only.

①Camera Mode/Multi Shots

Digital Multi Shots (High Speed) Mobile Mobile Multi Shots (Normal Speed)

Scan Data Multi Shots (Low Speed)

Sub Camera On

②Picture Size

1500 W1600 × H1200 ™ W144 × H176 1280 × H960 W120 × H160 ₩ W640 × H480 ₩ W112 × H112 ²⁴⁰ W240 × H320 ₩96 × H128

(3)Quality

Fine Normal Economy

(4)Exposure

 $[3] \dots [3] \dots [3] -2.0 \dots + 0 \dots +2.0$

(5)Storage

Phone Memory

Memory Card

6 Mobile Light

Mobile Light On

7 Delay Timer

105 5 sec

10 sec **७७20** 20 sec

®Key Guide Display THELP Key Guide Display

9White Balance

Fluor (Wht)

Cloudy

1 Tungsten

Fluor (Day)

(II)Color Control

Intense

Soft

(1)Self-view

Self-portrait

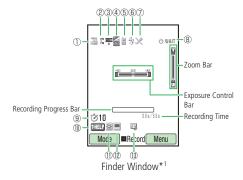
(12) Brush Up

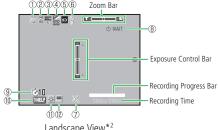
Brush Up On

(13)Night

Night On

Video Camera Indicators





Landscape View*2

- *1 In case of Video Mail (page 6-11)
- *2 Landscape View window can be used with Video (page 6-11) only.

1)Video Mode

Video On

Short Video On Sub Camera On

Video Mail On ②Image Size (Record Size)

3 Video (W320 × H240)

¼ Video Mail (W176 × H144)

Short Video (W128 × H96)

③Quality

Fine Fine

Mormal Normal

Economy E

4 Exposure

$$= -2.0... \pm 0... +2.0$$

⑤Storage

Phone Memory

Memory Card

6 Mobile Light

Mobile Light On

7) Voice Record

Voice Record Off

®Status

⊕ WAIT Standby ■STOP Stopped REC Recording ▶ FWD Forward ► PLAY Playing **■ PAUSE** Paused II▶SLOW Slow Playback

9 Delay Timer

™ 05 5 sec 7 10 10 sec

(1)Key Guide Display

THELP Key Guide Display

(1)White Balance

Daylight

Fluor (Wht) Tungsten

20 20 sec

Cloudy Fluor (Day)

(12)Color Control

Intense

Soft

(13) Self-view

Self-view On

Common Operations on Finder Window

Adjusting Zoom

Use (to adjust the zoom.

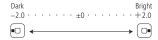
For details on the zoom in each mode, see pages 6-7 and 6-11.



- Zoom is unavailable while the delay timer (page 6-18) is set.
- The larger the zoom, the grainier the quality.

Exposure Control

Use •• to adjust the brightness.



• Depending on the environment, e.g. under fluorescent light, a striped pattern may appear on the image, which can be reduced by adjusting the brightness.

Mobile Light

Press ** to turn on/off the mobile light. When the mobile light is turned on, " ** appears on the finder window.

Using Key Guide Display

Press 1.8 to display key operations on the finder window. To exit the key guide display, press 1.8 again.

Using Self-view

Set the self-view mode, and you can take a picture of yourself as if you were looking into a mirror. Press ## to turn on/off the self-view mode. When the self-view mode is set to on, " per appears on the finder window.

Tip

 When the self-view camera is set to ON, Mobile mode (W240 x H320) is selected for taking pictures, while Video Mail mode (W176 x H144) is selected for recording videos.

Pictures

Settings for Frame, Delay Timer, Shutter Sound, effects, etc. can be made. The pictures are saved to Data Folder (Chapter 9) on the handset or memory card (Chapter 8) in JPEG format (popular format for saving images to a PC). Also edit the pictures using Edit Picture (page 6-22) or take pictures of faces (page 6-8) to use them in Phone Book.

Camera Modes

There are two modes for taking pictures: *Mobile* and *Digital*.

■Mobile

Take a picture to set as wallpaper, etc.

■Digital

Take a high-quality picture to display on an external device such as PC.

Mode	Picture Size	Max. Zoom
Mobile	W240 × H320	Approx. 5.0×
	W144 × H176	Approx. 8.3×
	W120 × H160	Approx. 9.9×
	W112 × H112	Approx. 10.6×
	W96 × H128	Approx. 12.1×
Digital	W1600 × H1200	_
	W1280 × H960	Approx. 1.3×
	W640 × H480	Approx. 2.5×

Capturing Still Images

Take pictures using Auto Focus.

Main menu Camera

- **1** Select *Mobile*|*Digital*→
- **2** Frame the subject on the display→ / ②

Camera focuses on subject in center of frame, shutter clicks and preview window appears.

3 Press

If Storage (page 6-18) is set to **Phone Memory**, the picture is saved to **Pictures** in Data Folder (page 9-2), and the finder window reappears. If it is set to **Memory Card**, a picture taken in **Mobile** is saved to **Pictures**, one taken in **Digital** to **Digital Camera**, and the finder window reappears.

Note

Capturing images in low-lighting may compromise image quality.
 Capture images in adequate lighting or use Mobile Light.

Tip

- Auto Focus may not properly function if: subject is moving, subject's distance is out of focus range, or lighting condition is poor.
- When the subject is not in the center; frame the subject in center of window, lock focus then move camera to compose the image (page 6-8).
- Pressing in Standby also displays the finder window.
- If you do not operate the handset for 90 seconds or so while the finder window is displayed, the window returns to Standby.
- On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the mode, some items may not appear):
 Picture Size/My Pictures/Self-view/Brush Up/Multi Shots/ Add Frame/Icons Display/Save Settings/Picture/Function
- After capturing image, press (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the mode, some items may not appear):
 Via Infrared/ScreenDisplay/Zoom/To Phone Book/Edit Picture/ Storage
- The storage place can be changed (page 6-18). You can also change the folder for pictures taken in *Mobile* (page 6-6) or pictures taken in *Digital* (page 6-6) whose storage place is set to the handset.

Camera

Using Auto Focus Lock

When the subject is not in the center of the viewfinder, camera cannot focus on the subject. Lock the focus on the subject then frame the image.

Main Camera

- **1** Select *MobilelDigital*→
- **2** Position subject in center of Display→

The Focus frame turns green when subject is in focus.

- Focus frame turns red when focus has failed.
- Re-compose the image→Press / completely

Taking a Picture for Phone Book Entry

Take a photo and save the image to a Phone Book entry (page 4-3). Set the camera mode (page 6-6) to Mobile and Picture Size (page 6-7) to $\textit{W112} \times \textit{H112}$.

1 On the preview window, press $\[\]$ (Menu) $\rightarrow To$ Phone $Book \rightarrow \[\]$

Creating a New Phone Book Entry with a PictureSelect *Add New*→ ■ → Create a Phone Book entry

Adding a Picture to Phone Book Entry

Select $Add \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select a Phone Book entry $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Edit Phone Book entry

- If the selected Phone Book entry contains a picture, select YES and press (OK) to change the picture.
- For details on saving a Phone Book entry, see page 4-3.

Functions for Taking Pictures

Setting Camera Modes

When the camera mode is set, "[a]"(Digital) or "[a]"(Mobile) appears on the finder window.

1 On the finder window, press ☒ (Mode)

Taking a Picture_to Set as Wallpaper, etc.

Select *Mobile* →

Taking a High-quality Picture

Select *Digital*→

Tip

 For details on changing the picture size in *Digital* and *Mobile*, see page 6-15.

Brush Up mode

Use Brush Up mode to give skin tone a more natural effect when photographing people. " Ω " appears in Brush Up mode.

- **1** On the finder window, press $\[\]$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Brush\ Up$ $\rightarrow \[\]$
- **2** Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Tip

- Even when Brush Up mode is set to ON, it may not be effective in shots
 where the subject's entire face is not in the shot, in profile shots, or in
 shots where the subject's face is at an angle to the screen.
- Skin Tones mode can be set separately for *Digital* and *Mobile*.

Multi Shots

Take nine pictures in succession. When Multi Shots is set to on, """ (High Speed), """ (Normal Speed) or """ (Low Speed) appears on the finder window.

- 1 Activate camera, press ☑ (Menu) → Multi Shots →
- **2** Select a speed→•

Note

• Multi Shots is unavailable in *Digital* mode (page 6-6).

Tip

- Nine pictures are taken in about two seconds (High Speed), three seconds (Normal Speed) or four seconds (Low Speed).
- Multi Shots is set to OFF when you stop using the camera or change the mode.

Frame Setting

Select a frame before you take a picture. There are ten types of frames (W240 \times H320) in the handset Data Folder.

- **1** On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→ *Add Frame*→ ■

Note

• Frames are unavailable in *Digital* mode (page 6-6).

Tip

- On the frame preview window, you can press ★:, ###, □ or □ to change frames.
- The frame setting is set to OFF when you stop using the camera or change the mode.

Videos

Recorded videos are saved to the handset (Data Folder) or memory card in MPEG-4 format (popular format for saving data to a mobile phone).

- MPEG-4 formatted files (.3G2) recorded in Video or stored in Data Folder cannot be attached to a message or sent via infrared. The files cannot be set as a ringtone pattern or alarm tone.
- MPEG4 or H.263 can be selected as a file format in Video Mail.
 MPEG4 is a format broadly used on SoftBank mobile phones. H.263 is usually used on foreign mobile phones. If a video cannot be played on the recipient's phone, change the file format and try recording again.

Video Modes

There are three modes for recording videos: Video, Video Mail and Short Video.

■Video

Record a video for a long time (up to 20 minutes).

■Video Mail

Record a video to attach to a message.

■Short Video

Record a video to attach to a message and send to an MPEG-4-compatible SoftBank mobile phone (PDC).

Mode	Size	Max. Zoom
Video	W320 × H240	Approx. 2.5×
Video Mail	W176 × H144	Approx. 4.2×
Short Video	W128 × H96	Approx. 6.2×

Recording Video

Recorded videos are automatically saved to the *Videos* folder in the *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*.

Main Camera

- Select Video|Video Mail|Short Video→

 ■
- **2** Frame the subject on the Display→ •/□

The start sound is heard and recording begins.

- In Video mode (left), press to pause then to resume recording.
- Press /

End tone sounds, recording is automatically saved and the first frame of the recording appears.

Tip

- Press and hold a in Standby also displays the finder window.
- The recording time displayed during recording is only intended as an approximate guide.
- If you do not operate the handset for 90 seconds or so while the finder window is displayed, the window returns to Standby.
- After recording a video, press (Menu) from the preview window to access the following (some features are unavailable depending on the video mode):

Via Infrared/Delete/ScreenDisplay/Icons Display/ To Phone Book

- Forward/Rewind and Slow playback can be performed on the preview window.
 - Forward/Rewind: Press and hold oduring playback
 Slow playback: Press and hold oduring playback is paused
- While the recording is paused, the recording can be ended (video saved) or stopped.
 - Recording end (save): Press Recording stop: Press Recording stop:
- The storage place and folder can be changed (page 6-18).

Deleting a Video

Delete a video displayed on the preview window.

1 On the preview window, press [v] (Menu) $\rightarrow Delete$ $\rightarrow [v] \rightarrow YES \rightarrow [v]$

Setting Video as a Ringtone Pattern

A video recorded in *Video Mail* or *Short Video* can be set as a ringtone pattern (page 4-4) for voice calls.

1 On the preview window, press ☑ (Menu)→

To Phone Book→ ■

Creating a New Phone Book Entry with a Ringtone Pattern Select Add New→ → Create a contact

Adding a Ringtone Pattern to Phone Book Entry
Select $Add \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select a Phone Book entry $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Edit Phone Book entry

- If the selected Phone Book entry contains a ringtone pattern, select YES and press ③ (OK) to change the ringtone pattern.
- For details on registering a Phone Book entry, see page 4-3.

Functions for Recording Videos

Setting Video Modes

When Video Mode is set, "" (Video), "" (Video Mail) or "" (Short Video) appears on the finder window.

1 On the finder window, press (Mode)

Recording a Video for a Long Time (up to 20 minutes)
Select Video→
■

Recording a Video to Attach to a Message

Select *Video Mail*→

Recording a Video for an MPEG-4-compatible SoftBank Handset

Select **Short Video**→

Recording a Video without Sound

Record a video without sound. When Voice Record is set to **OFF**, "">" appears on the finder window.

- 1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→Voice Record → ■
- **2** Select $OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Tip

• Voice Record is set to *ON* when playing/recording is ended.

Setting the Video Compression Method

Set the compression method for videos recorded in Video Mail.

- On the finder window, press \square (Menu) $\rightarrow Movie \rightarrow$ $\blacksquare \rightarrow Encode \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **2** Select *MPEG4|H*. 263→ •

Tic

 The encoding setting is set to MPEG4 when playback is ended or the mode is changed.

QR Code

The Main Camera allows you to scan QR codes and save up to ten scanned data items. However, this number depends on the amount of available memory space. Connect to a URL included in the scanned information, create a message to send to an address included in the scanned information or save it to Phone Book.



Note

- The camera may not be able to scan a QR code that is dirty or in the dark.
- Some QR codes cannot be scanned depending on the size or version.

Scanning a QR Code

Main menu ► Camera ► Scan Data

1 Select $Scan \rightarrow \bullet$

2 Frame a QR code in the Display→

■

● Use •□• to adjust the exposure.

 When the QR code has been divided into data areas, select YES to scan the other data areas. When all the areas are scanned, the QR code data is displayed.

3 Press [v] (Menu) $\rightarrow Save \rightarrow [v]$

Tip

The following step can also activate the barcode reader:
 Main menu→Tools→Useful Tools→Scan Data

- If (Mode) is pressed on the scan QR code window, the camera mode can be changed.
- After scanning a code, press (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items differ depending on the QR code data):

To Locations/Save/Copy/To Message

Tip

Depending on the scanned data, press to perform the following:

Data Operation	
Begins with MAILTO:	Send a message (pages 15-5, 15-10)
Begins with MEMORY:	Save to Phone Book (page 4-3)
Contains URL	Access the URL and display the web page
Contains Media Player URL	Access the URL and display the web page
Contains an email address	Send a message, save to Phone Book
Begins with TEL:	Make a call, send a message, save to Phone Book

Checking Scanned Data

Main menu ► Camera ► Scan Data

1 Select *Scanned Data*→

2 Select a QR code data→

Tip

 While a QR code data is selected, press (Menu) to perform the following:

Rename/Delete/Delete All

6

Camera

Using Location Information Contained in a QR Code

1 Scan a QR code→ 🗹 (Menu)

Saving a Scanned Data to the Location Memo List Select *To Locations*→

■

Camera & Video Settings

Camera Settings

Setting the Picture Quality

Set the picture quality at which to save a picture (in JPEG format). The higher the quality, the lower the compression rate and the larger the file size. When the quality is set, "

" (Fine), " (Normal) or " (Economy) appears on the finder window.

- On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→Picture
 → ■
- **2** Select $Quality \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$ the quality $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Picture Size Setting

Picture Size is indicated by the icon (page 6-3).

- Activate camera and press ☑ (Menu)→Picture Size
 → ■
- **2** Select a picture size→●
 - For details on picture sizes, see page 6-7.

Date Stamp

Add a date stamp to pictures.

1 On the finder window, press $\[\]$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Picture \rightarrow \[\]$

2 Select *Date Stamp* $\rightarrow ON \rightarrow \bigcirc$

3 Select a date color→

Note

• Date Stamp unavailable when:

• Digital is set for camera mode (page 6-9).

 Mobile is set for camera mode and W112 × H112 is set for picture size (page 6-7).

Night mode

This is the ideal mode for shots taken at night. In Night mode, " \supset " (Night) is displayed in the finder window.

1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu) → Picture → ■

2 Select $Night \rightarrow \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Note

• Night mode cannot be used with Multi Shots (page 6-9).

Tip

• Night mode returns to *OFF* after ending camera.

Displaying a Grid

Display horizontal and vertical gridlines on the finder window to use as a vertical and horizontal guide for taking pictures.

1 On the finder window, press $\[\]$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Function$

2 Select $Grid \rightarrow \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Shutter Sound

Select either of the two types.

1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→Function
→ ■

2 Select Shutter Sound→ → Pattern 1|Pattern 2 → ●

Tip

• The shutter sound is heard even if the manner mode (page 11-2) is set.

 To check the shutter sound, press (Play) while the sound is highlighted.

6

Auto Save

When Auto Save is set to *ON*, images are automatically saved to the specified location (*Storage*, page 6-18) and preview window does not appear.

- **1** On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→ Save Settings→ →Auto Save→ ■
- **2** Select $ONIOFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Video Settings

Setting the Video Quality

Set the video quality at which to save a video (in MPEG-4 or H.263 format). The higher the quality, the lower the compression rate and the larger the file size. When the quality is set, "##" (Fine), "##" (Normal) or "##" (Economy) appears on the finder window.

- 1 On the finder window, press $\[\]$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Movie$ $\rightarrow \[\]$
- **2** Select $Quality \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$ the quality $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Tip

- When video mode (page 6-11) is set to Short Video, the video is recorded in Economy.
- The maximum recording time varies depending on the video quality setting.

Start & End Sounds

Select either of the two types.

- **2** Select $Start/End \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Pattern 1 | Pattern 2 \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Tip

- The start/end sound is heard even if the manner mode (page 11-2) is set.
- To check the start/end sound, press (Play) while the sound is highlighted.

Setting Full Screen for Videos

Set the video (excluding Video) size to the display width.

On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→

ScreenDisplay→

■

Preview Window

Set Preview **ON** to view video immediately after recording and **OFF** to immediately return to recording mode.

- **1** Activate video→¬¬ (Menu)→Function→¬¬ Preview→¬¬
- **2** Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Camera & Video Settings

Changing Storage Place

The storage places for pictures and videos can be changed. When the storage place is set, " • " (Phone Memory) or " • " (Memory Card) appears on the finder window.

- **1** On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→
 Save Settings→ ■→Storage→ ■
- **2** Select *Phone Memory|Memory Card*→
 Select a folder →
 Sele

Tip

 If the storage place is set to Memory Card and a picture is taken in Digital (page 6-6), the picture is saved to Digital Camera.

Delay Timer

This feature allows you to take a picture or start recording after \(\bigcup \seta \) \(\bigcup \) is pressed and a specified time elapses. When the delay timer is set, "\(\bigcup 20" \) (20 sec), "\(\bigcup 10" \) (10 sec) or "\(\bigcup 05" \) (5 sec) appears on the finder window.

- 1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→

 Picture|Movie→ ■
- **2** Select *Delay Timer*→
- **3** Select seconds→

Note

• Zoom (page 6-5) is unavailable when the delay timer is activated.

Tip

- Press or to take a picture or start recording when the delay timer is activated.
- Press
 \(\subseteq \text{(Cancel)} \) or recording when the delay timer is activated.
- The delay timer is set to *OFF* when capturing or recording is finished.

6

White Balance

- **1** On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→*Picturel Movie*→
- **2** Select White Balance→

 ■
- **3** Select an item→

Tip

 The white balance is set to Auto when you stop using the camera/ video.

Color Control

When the color tone is set, " \blacksquare " (Intense) or " \blacksquare " (Soft) appears on the finder window.

- 1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→Picturel
 Movie→ ■
- **2** Select Color Control→

 ■
- **3** Select a color tone→

Tip

• The color tone is set to *Neutral* when you stop using the camera/video.

Picture & Video Effects

Take sepia tone and monochrome pictures.

- 1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→Picturel

 Movie→ →Effects→ ■
- **2** Select effects→

Tip

 The effects setting is set to OFF when you stop using the camera/ video.

Display Indicators

Set display indicators on or off.

On the finder window, press $\[\]$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Icons$ $Display \rightarrow \[\]$

Adjusting Flicker

E.g. under fluorescent light, you can set the frequency (Automatic/50Hz/60Hz) to reduce flicker.

2 Select Flicker $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow Automatic|50 Hz|60 Hz $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

Setting the File Name

Select the file name, taken by the mode other than Digital, to be the date and time or "name of your choice + nnnn". nnnn is a number from 0001 to 9999. In Digital, the name of a file saved to the handset will be the date and time, and the name of a file saved to the memory card will be "DCF_nnnn".

Select **Define**→ ■ →Enter a file name → ■

Using Shortcuts

Enable or disable keypad shortcuts for camera or video functions.

1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→Function
→ ■ →Key Shortcut → ■

2 Select *ON/OFF*→

Tic

 Use the following shortcuts to access functions in camera or video modes.

Key	Camera	Video
1.8 *1	Open Key Guide	
≥ p abc	Toggle camera modes (Mobile or Digital modes)	
∃å	Toggle video modes (Video, Video Mail or Short Video modes)	
4 5hi	Switch to QR Code Scanner	
S &	Adjust Picture Quality	
6 _{mno}	Adjust White Balance	
7 _{pqrs}	Set Delay Timer	
B tuv	Toggle Blush Up	Toggle Viewfinder Size*2
9.5 9.00g	Toggle Picture Size	Turn Microphone on/off
D.b.	Icons on/off	
★ ** 1	Turn Mobile Light on/off	
#A/a * 1	Switch to Self-view mode	

^{*1} Even if the Key Shortcut is set to *OFF*, the above can be used.

^{*2} Key operations are disabled when the video mode is *Video*.

Preview Setting

To check a picture or video stored in Data Folder or memory card, select it from the finder window or Data Folder.

Previewing a Picture

Preview a picture stored in Data Folder when the camera is activated.

- 1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→

 My Pictures→ ■
- 2 Select a picture →
 - lacktriangle To use the full screen, press $\ensuremath{\boxtimes}$ (Full).

Tip

Previewing a Video

Preview a video stored in Data Folder when the video is activated.

- On the finder window, press $\[\]$ (Menu) \rightarrow $My \ Videos \rightarrow \[\]$
- **2** Select a video→
 - To display the key guide, press 1.3.

Tip

- When a video is played, press (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the file type, some items may not appear):
 Set as (page 9-6)/Delete/Mute/Unmute/Normal Screen/Full Screen/Hide Icons*/Show Icons*/Search Time (page 7-9)/Send/Web Link/Display Link/Details
 - * Can only be selected in full screen mode.
- To adjust the volume during playback, use (). When the volume is adjusted, the mute is automatically released.

Camera

Send Functions

If Auto Save (page 6-17) is set to *OFF* or Preview (page 6-18) set to *ON*, a picture or video can be sent immediately after it is taken or recorded.

Note

• Videos recorded in *Video* cannot be sent.

Sending via Mail

1 On the preview window, press 🖫 (Mail)

• For details on creating S! Mail messages, see page 15-5.

Tip

 If the file size of a picture to be attached to a message exceeds the limit, a confirmation window appears. If *Compress & Attach* is selected, the size is compressed to 93 Kbytes or less and the picture is attached to a message.

Sending via Infrared Communication

- **1** From preview window, press ☑ (Menu)→ Via Infrared→
 - For details on infrared communication, see page 10-3.

Editing a Picture

Images that have been captured and stored in Data Folder or memory card can be edited. The following types of files can be edited: JPEG files of 1.6 Mbytes or less, PNG files of 364 Kbyte or less. Images that are larger than W240 \times H320 (W320 \times H240) are reduced to W240 \times H320. A picture that is smaller than W16 \times H16 cannot be edited.

- If Overwrite is performed, the file cannot be restored to the original. To leave the original file, select Save as New.
- If Data Folder is full, delete unnecessary files from Data Folder before editing a picture.

Changing the Picture Size

Change the picture size to $W240 \times H320$, $W144 \times H176$, $W120 \times H160$, $W112 \times H112$, $W96 \times H128$ or Define.

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Edit Picture

- **1** Select *Edit*→ → *Phone Memory|Memory Card*→ → Select a picture → ■
- 2 Press ☑ (Menu)→*Picture Size*→ → Select a picture size →
 - After selecting the size, you can use to adjust the position of the picture to clip.

Adjusting to the Width or Height

Press ☑ (Resize)→Fit to Width/Fit to Length→ ■

Rotating the Picture

Press
(Resize)→Rotate Image→

(Resize)→Rotate Image→

3 Press \bigcirc (Cut) $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ (OK) \rightarrow Overwrite|Save as $New \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Tip

- To customize picture size, select *Define* and enter picture size (W16 to 240 × H16 to 320).
- If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

Picture Effects

Main menu Tools Useful Tools Edit Picture

- Press ☑ (Menu)→Effects→ → Select effects → ■

 Selecting a Color Tone

 Select Change Color → → / □
- **3** Press **●**→**©** (OK)→OverwritelSave as New→

Tip

 If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

Adding a Frame

Select from ten preinstalled frames (W240 \times H320).

Main

Tools

Useful Tools

Edit Picture

- **2** Press $(Menu) \rightarrow Add Frame \rightarrow$
- 3 Select Phone Memory|Memory Card→ → Pictures
 → → Select a frame → ●
- **4** Press $\bullet \rightarrow \boxtimes$ (OK) $\rightarrow O$ verwrite|Save as New $\rightarrow \bullet$

Tip

- After selecting a frame, you can press ★ a or ★ to change frames.
- If the size of a frame is smaller than that of the picture, you can
 use use to adjust the position of the frame.
- If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

6

Adding a Stamp

Select from 15 preinstalled stamps.

Main menu Tools Useful Tools Edit Picture

- 3 Select *Phone Memory* | Memory Card → □ → Pictures → □ → Select a stamp → □ (twice)

4 Press (OK)→(OK)→Overwrite|Save as New → (■)

Note

 If the size of a stamp is larger than that of the picture, the stamp cannot be added.

Tip

- After selecting a stamp, you can press ★☆ or ★☆ to change stamps.
- You can use 🔁 to adjust the position of the stamp.
- To cancel an added stamp, press 🗹 (Menu) and select Undo All.
- If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

Adding Text

Add text by selecting from five font sizes, nine font colors and frame colors.

Main ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Edit Picture

- **1** Select *Edit*→ → *Phone MemorylMemory Card*→ → Select a picture → ■
- **2** Press [x] (Menu) $\rightarrow Add Text \rightarrow [\bullet]$
- **3** Select a font size→ → Enter a text→ ■

Changing a Font Color

Press (Color)→ (Color) → (Colo

Changing a Frame Color

Press ☐ (Color)→ • □ / □ • •

4 Press \bullet → \boxdot (OK) → Overwritel Save as New → \bullet

Tip

- You can use to adjust the position of the text.
- The maximum number of characters that can be entered are 9 for Large and Medium, 12 for Medium-Small (Standard), 13 for Small and 20 for Extra-Small.
- If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

Rotating a Picture

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Useful Tools ▶ Edit Picture

- **3** Press $(OK) \rightarrow Overwrite | Save as New \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Tip

 If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

Compounding Pictures

Compound two pictures.

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Edit Picture

- **1** Select *Edit*→ → *Phone Memory|Memory Card*→ → Select a picture → ■
- Press (Menu)→Overlay→ →Phone Memoryl
 Memory Card→ →Select a picture→
 Adjusting the Transparent Rate

 Press () / □

3 Press $\longrightarrow \boxtimes$ (OK) $\rightarrow O$ verwrite|Save as New $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

Tip

- The size of a picture must be the same as that of a picture being edited.
- If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

Mixing Pictures to Create Wallpaper

Mix four pictures to create wallpaper.

Main menu

Tools

Useful Tools

Edit Picture

- Select *Wallpaper*→●
- 2 Select [1]→ → Phone Memory Memory Card→ → Select a picture → ■
- **3** Select pictures for [2] to [4]

Repeat Step 2.

- To unset a picture, press [v](Delete).
- **4** Press 3 (OK)→Phone Memory|Memory Card → \blacksquare

Tip

• Press (Resize) to change the picture size to W120 x H160.

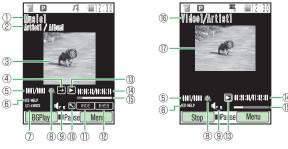
About Media Player	7-2
Playback Window	7-2
Playing Music & Videos	7-3
Setting the Wallpaper Displayed during Music Playback	7-4
Operations during Playback	7-4
Using Playlists	7-5
Creating a Playlist	7-5
Playing a Playlist	7-6
Editing a Playlist	7-6
Accessing Recently Played Files	7-7
Downloading Music and Video Files	7-7
Streaming	
Other Operations & Settings	
Saving Music Files to My Library	7-8
Adding a Music File Being Played to a Playlist	7-8
Switching Play Modes	7-8
Using Search Time	7-9
Setting Surround	7-9
Equalizer	7-9
Setting Voice Reduction	7-9
Sending Files	7-9
Viewing Property	7-10
Switching to Background Playback	7-10
Music Player	7-10
Playback Window	7-10
Activating Music Player	7-10
,	

About Media Player

Media Player enables playback and streaming of audio/video files stored in the handset or the memory card. Messages can be created while listening to a music file.

- Media Player supports 3GPP, 3GPP2, MP4 and SMC file formats, However. some files cannot be played depending on the file type.
- You cannot automatically receive S! Mail (page 15-24) while streaming.
- Background playback may be paused or stopped depending on the type of function used during background playback (page 7-10). For example, if you launch S! Appli, background playback is paused.
- Media Player cannot be used when battery power is low. Charge the battery pack to use Media Player.

Playback Window



Music File Playback Window

Video File Playback Window

(2)Artist name/Album name

- (3) Playback image
- 4) Play mode

①Title

- AII Repeat Random 1 Current Only
- ⑤ File number/total number of files (7)Lyric
- (11)Surround
- (13) Playback status
 - ► Playing Rewinding
- Forwarding
- **■** Buffering Slow playback ■ Stop

- Repeat All
- 6 Help guidance
- (8)Web Link
- 10 Voice Cancel
- (12) Equalizer
 - **■** Paused

(1) Elapsed playback time/Total playback time

15Progress bar

(16) File name/Artist name

17) Video Display

Playing Music & Videos

Main menu Media Player

1 Select Audio/Videos→ ■

Disc Search

Files in *Ring Song•Tone* and *Music* folders of Data Folder are displayed, grouping albums and album jackets by artist.

All Music

All files in *Ring Song•Tone* and *Music* folders of Data Folder are displayed at once.

Artist/Album/Folder

Files in *Ring Song*Tone* and *Music* folders of Data Folder are displayed by artist, album or folder.

Videos

Select **Phone Memory**/**Memory Card**→ ■
Files in **Videos** folder of Data Folder are displayed.

2 Select a file→

- To end Media Player, press .
- If a music file contains lyric data, display the lyrics by pressing T_{ab} or S_{ab} during playback (page 7-5).

● If a music file includes a jacket photo, the jacket photo appears on the display when the file is selected on the file list. Press during playback to switch the jacket photo (page 7-5).

Tip

- Pressing 😨 in Standby also displays the Audio menu.
- If you close your handset while playing a music file with Media Player,
 Music Player will be displayed on the external display.
- When manner mode is set to *Silent* or *Alarms* (page 11-2), a
 confirmation window is displayed. To disable manner mode temporarily,
 select *YES*. Select *NO* if you do not want to disable manner mode.
 However, a confirmation window is not displayed when earphones are
 connected.
- If you press and hold T in Standby, you can resume playing a music file that you played last.
- When a file is selected, press 🗹 (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items vary depending on the file type):

 ${\it To~Playlist/Sort~by/Buy~Key/Details/Change~View}$

While playing/paused, press [w] (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items vary depending on the file type):
 Search Time/Play Mode/Surround/Equalizer/Voice Cancel/Change Jacket/To Playlist/Web Link/Details/Mute/Unmute/Normal Screen/Full Screen/Show Icons/Hide Icons/Display Link

Setting the Wallpaper Displayed during Music Playback

Main menu ► Media Player

1 Select $Audio \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Player Image \rightarrow \blacksquare$

2 Select *OriginallKu-man*→

Operations during Playback

Functions	Operation while stopped/paused	Operation during playing
Return to the beginning of a file*1/ Skip to previous	Press ** is / •□	Press ★***/ Press ★**** Press ★**** Press ★**** Press Press
Skip to next	Press ##A/a/	Press ###/ 🕒
Forward	Press and hold •*1	Press and hold 📭
Rewind	Press and hold ••• *1	Press and hold •
Rewind video frame by frame (only video files)	Press ••• *2	_
Forward video frame by frame (only video files)	Press • *2	_
Slow Playback (only video files)	Press and hold •*2	
Adjust volume	Use 📮	Use 📮
View operation guide	Press 1.®	Press 1.®

^{*1} Operation is available for music files only.

^{*2} Operation is possible only when playback is paused.

Tip

• The following shortcuts can be assigned during music or video playback.

Key	During music file playback	During video file playback
(#37 525 700	Background Play	
(Press and hold)	My Library	
★ *°	Previous File	
# A/a	Next File	
1 .e	Key Guide	
2.bc	Play Mode	_
∃å	Surround	Mute/Unmute
4 tc	Equalizer	Screen Display
S iki	Voice Cancel	_
7,*	Lyric [Previous]	_
8 tuv	Change Jacket	_
9 _{unyz}	Lyric [Next]	_
□ ,t)	_	Icons Display

Using Playlists

Using playlists, you will be able to create a list of your favorite songs and play them as a set. Add music files to playlists by all tracks at once by artist or by album. Besides playlists that you created in advance, there is also My Library playlist where the current music file being played can be added (page 7-8).

Creating a Playlist

Create up to ten playlists in your handset. Also create up to ten playlists in a memory card. Each playlist can contain up to 50 tracks.

- 1 In Standby, press

 → Playlist →

 ■
- **2** Press ☑ (Menu)→New Playlist→ →Phone Memory/Memory Card → ■
- **3** Enter a playlist name $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **4** Select *All Music*→

Selecting by Artist/by Album

Select $Artist/Album \rightarrow \blacksquare$ \rightarrow Select an artist/album $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

- **5** Select a music file→
 - To add another file, repeat Step 5.
- 6 Press
 ☐ (Create)

Playing a Playlist

- **1** In Standby, press $\textcircled{-}Playlist \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Select a playlist→醤 (Play)

Tip

- When manner mode is set to *Silent* or *Alarms* (page 11-2), a
 confirmation window is displayed. To disable manner mode temporarily,
 select *YES*. Select *NO* if you do not want to disable manner mode.
 However, a confirmation window is not displayed when earphone is
 connected
- When a playlist is selected, press v (Menu) to perform the following:
 Delete/Copy/Rename/New Playlist/Change Order

Editing a Playlist

- 2 Select a playlist

Editing a Playlist Name

Press \P (Menu) \rightarrow Rename \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Edit a playlist name \rightarrow \blacksquare

Deleting

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow **Delete** \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow **YES** \rightarrow \bigcirc

Copying

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow Copy \rightarrow \bigcirc Phone Memory|Memory Card \rightarrow \bigcirc

Adding Tracks to Playlist

 To select music files by artist or album, select Artist/Album and select an artist/album.

Deleting Tracks of a Playlist

Press \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow Remove Tracks \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow One \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc

- If you delete all tracks on a playlist, the playlist will be deleted, too.

Changing the Playing Order of a Playlist

Press \longrightarrow Select a track \longrightarrow (Change) \longrightarrow Use \bigoplus to select the position to which to move the track \longrightarrow \blacksquare

Tip

 If you delete a file from a playlist, the original music file will not be deleted.

Accessing Recently Played Files

Display the 20 most recent music and video files played.

Main menu Media Player

1 Select $Audio \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Playlist \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Recent \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select a file $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

Accessing the Recently Played Video Files

Select $Videos \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Recent \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Tip

- Only playable files are saved to the list of recently played files.
- If you play the same file more than once, the most recent record is saved to the list.
- When a file is selected, press (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items vary depending on the file type):

To Playlist/Delete/View Type/Details

• While playing, press [w] (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items vary depending on the file type):

Search Time/Play Mode/Surround/Equalizer/Voice Cancel/ Change Jacket/To Playlist/Web Link/Details/Mute/Unmute/ Normal Screen/Full Screen/Show Icons/Hide Icons/Display Link

Downloading Music and Video Files

Download music and video files from Yahoo! Keitai, etc.

Main menu Media Player

- **1** Select *AudiolVideos*→
- **2** Select Download Music|Download Videos→

 → YES→
 - Follow the onscreen instructions.

Streaming

Access Web pages for streaming music/video files.

- Packet transmission fees apply even if playback is paused because the handset continues network communication.
- When manner mode is set to *Silent* or *Alarms* (page 11-2), a confirmation window is displayed. To disable manner mode temporarily, select *YES*. Select *NO* if you do not want to disable manner mode. However, a confirmation window is not displayed when the earphone is connected.

Main menu Media Player

1 Select $Streaming \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter\ URL \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Enter $URL \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Streaming from Bookmark URL

Access the bookmarked Web Pages for streaming.

Main menu Media Player

Select Streaming $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow \blacksquare$

2 Select a Bookmark→

■

Streaming from URLs Streamed

Main menu Media Player

1 Select Streaming $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Recent \rightarrow \blacksquare$

2 Select a title→

Streaming from Links in Messages and Web Pages

Play stream content by selecting a link.

Streaming from S! Mail/SMS

Display a link $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow $Connect \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Streaming from the Internet

Display a link→

■

Operations may vary depending on the website.

Other Operations & Settings

● Titles in a playlist cannot be added to another playlist during playback.

Saving Music Files to My Library

Add up to 50 tracks to My Library.

1 Play (or pause) a music file then press and hold 🐯

Adding a Music File Being Played to a Playlist

Add a music file being played or paused to a playlist.

1 Play (or pause) a music file, press ☑ (Menu)→

To Playlist→ ■

2 Select a Playlist→●

Switching Play Modes

While a music file is playing/paused, press ☑ (Menu)
→Play Mode→
■

2 Select a Play mode→

Using Search Time

Specify a position (time) from which you want to play a file.

- 1 Play (or pause) a music file, press ☑ (Menu)→
 Search Time→ ■
- 2 Enter start point (time)→

 ■

Playback starts from the specified point.

Setting Surround

Expand the spatial imaging of playback.

- **1** While a music file is playing/paused, press ☑ (Menu) → Surround → 🔳
- **2** Select a surround type→

Equalizer

Boost certain frequencies during playback.

- 1 Open (or pause) a music file and press ☑ (Menu)→ *Equalizer*→ ■
- **2** Select an equalizer type or genre→

Setting Voice Reduction

Reduce the vocal level of playback and emphasize the instruments.

- While a music file is playing/paused, press ☑ (Menu)

 → Voice Cancel → ■
- **2** Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet$

Tip

- Voice Cancel may be unavailable for certain music files.
- Setting Voice Cancel to ON while playing a monaural music file will decrease the volume of playback sound.

Sending Files

Send music or video files to other mobile phones or infrared.

Main menu Data Folder

- Select Ring Song TonelMusiclVideos → →
 Select a music/video file → ☑ (Menu) → Send → ■
- **2** Select the transmission method→
 - See page 10-3 for infrared communication.

Viewing Property

View music/video file properties.

1 Select a file $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Details \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Tip

The file name and size, playback time, etc. are displayed in the property.
 Displayed items vary depending on the file type.

Switching to Background Playback

Switch to background playback in order to use other functions.

1 While a music file is playing/paused, press ☑ (BGPlay)

Tip

 You can switch to background playback by pressing while a music file is being played, too. If you press again in Standby during background playback, Media Player will be displayed.

Music Player

Use Music Player to navigate Media Player when handset is closed.

Playback Window



- 1) Play mode
- ② Playback status
- (3) Media Player displays the title, artist name, album name, track number and playback time. Press **q** to change the information displayed.

Activating Music Player

1 Close your handset while a music file is being played on Media Player

Note

• When the battery is low, Music Player won't launch.

Tip

 If you open your handset while music is being played on Music Player, it will be switched to background playback.

About Memory Card	8-2
Inserting a Memory Card	8-2
Removing a Memory Card	8-2
Using a Memory Card	8-3
Memory Card Configuration	8-3
Formatting a Memory Card	8-4
Checking Stored Files	8-4
Confirming Memory Card Usage Status	8-4

About Memory Card

The pictures you take, videos you record and various downloaded files can be saved to a memory card.

- This manual refers to a microSDTM memory card as a "memory card".
- For details on saving files to a memory card, see the corresponding explanation for each function.
- Your handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB (as of May, 2007). There is no guarantee that all memory cards will work with your handset.

Inserting a Memory Card

Insert a memory card after turning off the handset. Otherwise, files on the memory card may be lost.





- 1 Open the memory card slot cover (1)
- **Q** Gently push a memory card into the slot until it clicks into position, making sure the gold terminal is facing down (2)
- **3** Close the memory card slot cover (3)

Note

 Do not use excessive force to open the memory card slot cover. Doing so may damage the cover.

Removing a Memory Card

When you remove the memory card from the handset, follow the reverse procedure of inserting it.

Note

- Do not use excessive force to open the memory card slot cover. Doing so may damage the cover.
- If your hand is released after pushing in the memory card lightly with your finger, the memory card comes out a little from the handset when removing.
- The memory card may pop out abruptly when removing it from your handset. Be cautious when ejecting the memory card.

Using a Memory Card

Check and edit pictures and other data saved to a memory card. Also save a backup of Data Folder, Phone Book and other data in your handset to a memory card (pages 4-10, 9-14).

- If the battery level is low, your handset may not read or write files.
- Never remove the memory card or battery pack while files are being accessed or formatting. Damage to memory card may result and files/data may be lost.
- Processing may take a while for some types of files.
- Files on the memory card may be changed or lost by improper use, accidents, or mechanical failure. We recommend that you make backups of your important files.
- Some files saved from a PC or other device may not be displayed/played on your handset.
- Among files on the memory card, the files with a name using more than 32 characters are not displayed.
- If the same name is used for more than one file or folder on the memory card using double-byte characters regardless of upper case or lower case, the name may not be displayed correctly on your PC or other device.
- Do not put labels or stickers on the memory card.

Memory Card Configuration

The folder tree on the memory card is shown below.

Folder Name	Description	
C DCIM	Stores pictures taken in Digital mode (page 6-6).	
PRIVATE		
TOSHIBA		
□ DIC	Stores Dictionary files copied from the supplied CD-ROM.	
MYFOLDER		
	Folder configuration is same as handset Message Box (page 15-12).	
My Items	Stores folders (Pictures, My Pictograms, Videos, Ring Song · Tone, Music, Templates, Flash(R), Flash(R) Tones, Books, S! Appli, Other Documents) of memory card Data Folder (page 9-2). Bookmark backup files are also stored.	
Stores settings (Relocate function) (page 13-42), Gamendeco files, Keitaideco files, Media Player f		
Utility		
Calendar	Calendar Stores appointment backup files.	
Contacts	Contacts Stores Phone Book entries and backup files.	
Memo 🤍	Stores Notepad backup files.	
Rights	Stores Content Key backup files.	
Tasks	Stores Tasks backup files.	

Some files cannot be played depending on the file type.

If a memory card is formatted by another device, it may not work properly
with your handset. Be sure to use your handset to format a memory card.

Main menu ► Settings ► Memory ► Format Card

Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Note

 If Dictionary data is damaged, the file may be lost when memory card is formatted. Reinstall Dictionary from the supplied CD-ROM. For details, refer to the instructions on the CD-ROM.

Checking Stored Files

Checking Files on the Memory Card

Main Data Folder

Press 🕒

2 Select a folder→

3 Select a file→ **•**

Confirming Memory Card Usage Status

Main
Memory

Memory Status

1 Select *Memory Card*→

Tip

 You can check used space on the memory card with the procedures below.

Main menu \rightarrow *Data Folder* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow *Memory Status* Press 3 to toggle between handset and memory card status.

9-2
9-2
9-3
9-4
9-4
9-9
9-9
9-9
9-10
9-10
9-11
9-11
9-11
9-11
9-12
9-12
9-12
9-13
9-13
9-13
9-14
9-14
9-15
9-15
9-16

Data Folder

Store files to Data Folder. Saved files can be used as wallpaper and ringtones, or attached to messages (page 15-8).

Data folder capacity is 14 MB. Approximately 1,000 files (including personal folders) and 50 S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli items can be stored.

 Pictures/My Pictograms/Ring Song · Tone/S! Appli/Music/Videos/ Lifestyle-Appli/Books/Templates folders contain a link to Yahoo! Keitai download site.

Structure of Data Folder

The following folders are preinstalled in your handset.



^{*1} Available only for memory card Data Folder

^{*2} Available only for handset Data Folder

Files Storable in Data Folder

The following files are stored on the corresponding folder in Data Folder.

Folder		File Format (Extension)	Page
□ Pictures*1		Pictures*¹ □ JPEG (.JPEG, .JPG, .JPE) □ GIF (.GIF) □ PNG (.PNG)	
	My Pictograms	ograms GIF (.GIF) BY GPK (.GPK)	
Dig	gital Camera*2		8-3
Rir	Ring Song • Tone*1		9-5
S! Appli		🎮 Java (.JAD, .JAR, .RMS)	17-2
Music*1		MPEG-4 (.3GP* ⁵ , .MP4* ⁵ , .M4A, .SMC)	9-6
■ Vic	deos*1		9-6
Lif	estyle-Appli*3	🎮 Java (.JAD, .JAR, .RMS)	20-2
■ Bo	oks*1	🕮 CCF (.CCF)	9-6
■ Tei	mplates	HTML mail templates (.HMT)	9-7
Fla	sh(R)*1	SWF (.SWF)	0.7
	Flash(R) Tones	Ringtone Flash® (.SWF)	9-7
□ Ma	Main Menu ^{⋆1⋆3} ■ Image files for Main menu (.TMF)		9-8

Folder	File Format (Extension)	Page
Gamendeco*1	■/■/■ Icon/image files for screen decoration (.TSBI1, .TSBW1, .TSBT1)	9-8
◯ Keitaideco	Keitaideco files (.tsbk)	9-8
Other Documents*1		9-8

^{*1:} Folders can be created in each folder.

^{*2:} Only Data Folder on the memory card can be viewed. Files that do not comply with the DCF standard cannot be displayed.

^{*3:} Only Data Folder on the handset can be viewed.

^{*4:} Playback of some files may not be possible.

^{*5:} Only Chaku-Uta® files are saved.

^{*6:} Files cannot be accessed on handset.

Note

- Files on the handset may be changed or lost by improper use, accidents, or mechanical failure. We recommend that you make backups of your important files.
- Files which require content usage rights will have "△" displayed next to the icons on the left side of file names. If you do not have a content key, press ☑ (Menu) and select Buy Key in order to obtain a content key.

Tip

- Chaku-Uta®, S! Appli, video and other files saved to the handset or memory card may become inaccessible after handset repairs or when USIM card is replaced.
- You may not be able to open a file on a PC, PDA, or other device if: You change the file name on your handset or the file name includes a
 "~" or "—".
- DCF is an abbreviation for "Design rule for Camera File system," a standard developed by the Japan Electronic Industry Development Association (JEIDA) for the purpose of facilitating the transfer of digital camera images among various devices.
- Whether a file can be sent via infrared or moved to the memory card depends on the forwarding and memory card forwarding permission properties. However, the files in the *My Pictograms* folder can be sent via infrared even if the forwarding property is *Unavailable*.
- Flash® is an animation technology that combines images and sound.

Using Files & Folders

Opening Files

Main menu Data Folder

1 Select a folder→

2 Select a file→

Using Download Link

Some folders contain a link to Yahoo! Keitai. Use links to access Yahoo! Keitai and download content.

Using Picture Files

Send: Transfer the selected file.

● As Mail : Send via S! Mail (page 15-8). ● Via Infrared : Send via infrared (page 10-3).

Set as: Set the selected file.

•Wallpaper : Wallpaper.

In-CallsMessagesIncoming call image.Incoming message image.

Edit Picture: Edit the selected image (page 6-22).

Location: View location information of selected file or access map via the

web.

Delete: Delete files.

One : Delete the selected file (page 9-13).Select Multi : Select multiple files to delete (page 9-13).

• Change the file name (name 9.13).

Rename: Change the file name (page 9-13).

Copy: Copy files.

One : Copy the selected file (page 9-15).Select Multi : Select multiple files to copy (page 9-15).

• All : Copy all files (page 9-15).

Move: Move files.

• One : Move the selected file (page 9-14).

•Select Multi: Select multiple files to move (page 9-14).

• All : Move all files (page 9-14).

Change View: Select view.

•View Type : Switch between thumbnail and list views for files and folders (page 9-9).

Sort by : Change sort condition (page 9-16).

Slideshow: Start slideshow (page 9-16).

Create Folder: Create a new folder (page 9-12).

Buy Key: Obtain a content key.

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, picture size, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, available/unavailable to play/view, available/unavailable to save photo, and setting information).

Using Melody Files

Press (Menu) to perform the following: **Set as**: The following items are displayed.

● Ringtone : Set the selected file as the ringtone for incoming

voice/video calls, messages, delivery check messages, missed calls, Circle Talk calls or Hot Status notifications.

●Sound Effects : Set the selected file as power on/off, opening or

closing tone. **Show Icons/Hide Icons**: Switch the display of icons on the playback window

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, available/unavailable to play/view, and setting

information).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about Send, Delete, Rename, Copy, Move, Sort by, Create Folder or Buy Key.

Using Music Files

Press (Menu) to perform the following: **Set as**: The following items are displayed.

Voice Call: Set the selected file as the ringtone for voice calls. **• Video Call** : Set the selected file as the ringtone for video calls.

: Set the selected file as the ringtone for receiving Message

messages.

DeliveryCheck: Set the selected file as the ringtone for delivery check

messages.

• Missed Call : Set the selected file as the ringtone for missed calls

(page 14-6).

©Circle Talk: Set the selected file as the ringtone for Circle Talk calls. ●Hot Status : Set the selected file as the ringtone for Hot Status

notifications

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file size, play time, bit rate, sampling rate, available/unavailable to save/forward/ memory card transfer, file type, title, artist, album name, copyright, create date, description, available/unavailable to play/view, and setting information).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about Send, Delete, Rename, Copy, Move, Sort by, Create Folder or Buy Key.

Using Video Files

• Message

Press [97] (Menu) to perform the following: **Set as**: The following items are displayed.

Voice Call: Set the selected file as the ringtone for voice calls. **• Video Call** : Set the selected file as the ringtone for video calls.

: Set the selected file as the ringtone for receiving

messages.

DeliveryCheck: Set the selected file as the ringtone for delivery check messages.

Change View: The following items are displayed.

View Type: Switch the display of files and folders between

thumbnail view (icons and images) and list view (text

and guide) (page 9-9).

Sort by : Changes the order of files in specified condition

(page 9-16).

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file size, play time, bit rate, sampling rate, available/unavailable to save/forward/ memory card transfer, file type, title, creator, copyright, create date, description, available/unavailable to play/view, and setting information).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about Send, Delete, Rename, Copy, Move, Create Folder or Buy Key.

Using Book Files

Press [12] (Menu) to perform the following:

Change View: The following items are displayed.

View Type : Switch the display of files and folders between

thumbnail view (icons and images) and list view (text

and guide) (page 9-9).

Sort by : Changes the order of files in specified condition

(page 9-16).

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, creator, authority*, seller*, publisher*, episode, create date, available/unavailable to play/view, description, and vender).

* These items do not appear for some types of book files.

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about Send, Delete, Rename, Copy, Move, Create Folder of Buy Key.

Using Templates

Press (Menu) to perform the following:

Create Mail: Create a message using selected templates.

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, title,

file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about Send, Delete, Rename, Copy,

Move or Sort by.

Using Flash® Files

Press 🖭 (Menu) to perform the following:

Set Wallpaper*¹: Set the selected file as the wallpaper for Standby.

Set as*2: The following items are displayed.

Voice Call
 Set the selected file as the ringtone for voice calls.
 Set the selected file as the ringtone for video calls.
 Message
 Set the selected file as the ringtone for receiving

messages.

DeliveryCheck: Set the selected file as the ringtone for delivery check

messages.

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, available/unavailable to play/view, and setting information).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about Send, Delete, Rename, Copy,

Move, Sort by, Create Folder*3 or Buy Key.

- *1 Unavailable for files saved in Flash(R) Tones folder.
- *2 Available only for files saved in Flash(R) Tones folder.
- *3 The folder can be created only in a Flash(R) folder.

When Main Menu Files are Selected/Displayed

Press [97] (Menu) to perform the following:

Set as Menu: Set the selected file for Main menu. **Change View**: The following items are displayed.

View Type : Switch the display of files and folders between

thumbnail view (icons and images) and list view (text

and guide) (page 9-9).

Sort by : Changes the order of files in specified condition

(page 9-16).

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, available/unavailable to play/view and setting information).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about *Delete, Rename, Move* or *Create Folder*.

When Files for Gamendeco are Selected/Displayed

Press 🖭 (Menu) to perform the following:

Gamendeco: Set the icons/images of the Main Screen (page 11-7).

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, picture size, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about Send, Delete, Rename, Copy, Move, Sort by or Create Folder.

When Keitaideco Files are Selected 815T

Press 🖭 (Menu) to perform the following:

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about *Delete* or *Move*.

Using vObjects

Press 🗹 (Menu) to perform the following:

To Phone Book/To Cal./Tasks/To Notepad/To Message/

To Bookmarks: Save vObjects to the Calendar or Phone Book, etc (page 9-12).

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about Send, Delete, Rename, Copy, Move, Sort by or Create Folder.

When Text Files are Selected/Displayed

Press (Menu) to perform the following:

Encoding Type: Change character encoding type.

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about Send, Delete, Rename, Copy, Move, Sort by, Create Folder or Buy Key.

Tip

• Depending on file size and number of text lines, a file may not be played.

Changing Data Folder View

Select the list view or thumbnail view to see a list of files contained in Pictures, My Pictograms, Digital Camera, Videos, Books and Main Menu folders.

Main Data Folder

- 1 Select Pictures|My Pictograms|Digital Camera| Videos|Books|Main Menu→ → → (Menu)
- 2 Select Change View \longrightarrow View Type \longrightarrow Select the view type \longrightarrow

Displaying the Memory Usage Status

Check the memory space used in Data Folder.

Main menu ► Settings ► Memory ► Memory Status

1 Select *Data Folder*→

• Press 🗹 (Count) to check how many files are stored.

Tip

 You can check used space on the memory card with the procedures below. Press so to switch screens to check the used space on the handset and the memory card.

Main menu → Data Folder → Memory Status

Displaying the File Properties

Main Data Folder

1 Select a folder→ **•**

2 Select a file $\rightarrow \mathbb{F}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Details \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Using Picture Files

Use picture files stored in Data Folder for wallpaper, incoming images, video calls, Phone Book (picture), and so on.

1 Browse Data Folder from each function

- For details on setting the wallpaper, see page 11-6.
- For details on setting the incoming image, see page 11-8.
- For details on the video call setting, see page 5-5.
- For details on setting Phone Book pictures, see page 4-3.
- **2** Select *Pictures* → → Select a file → ■
- 3 Use ••• to adjust the position of the image to clip

 → □ (Cut) →
 - For details on changing image size, see page 6-22.

Note

 If an animation GIF is selected, only the first image (still image) is displayed.

Tip

- Some functions may not allow you to change image size.
- If the image size cannot be changed, animation GIF files are displayed as animations.

Using Melody, Music/Videos/Flash® Files

Melody files, music files, and video files in Data Folder can be used as ringtone, incoming image and alarm sound, etc. Also, Flash® files in the *Flash(R)* folder can be specified for wallpaper, and files in the *Main Menu* folder can be specified for the Main menu image.

1 Browse Data Folder from each function

- For details on the Main menu image setting, see page 1-21.
- For details on the sound setting, see page 11-4.
- For details on the Wallpaper setting, see page 11-6.
- For details on setting the schedule alarm tone, see page 13-25.
- For details on setting the alarm tone, see page 13-16.
- For details on setting a different ringtone for each Phone Book entry, see page 4-4.
- 2 Select Ring Song TonelMusic|Videos|Flash(R)|
 Flash(R) Tones|Main Menu→ → Select a file→
 (twice)

Using Keitaideco files 815T

You can set a Keitaideco file in Data Folder as wallpaper, as the ringtone for incoming voice calls or messages, as the image for incoming calls or messages, as a Gamendeco or as the Main menu image, etc.

1 Select Keitaideco from a function→

- For details on setting sounds, see page 11-4.
- For details on setting wallpaper, see page 11-6.
- For details on setting the image for incoming calls, see page 11-8.
- For details on setting the image for receiving messages, see page 11-8.
- For details on setting Gamendeco, see page 11-7.
- For details on setting the Main menu image, see page 1-21.

Tip

- Some Keitaideco files cannot be set for some functions.
- For more details of Keitaideco files, see page 13-7.

Using vObjects

About vObjects

vObject is a collective name for file formats that enable your handset and other vObject compatible SoftBank handsets, PCs and other devices to exchange and mutually use data such as Phone Book entries, Calendar and Task data. vObjects can be sent and received as mail attachments (page 15-8) or transfer them by Infrared (page 10-3). If you save vObjects to a memory card, you will be able to use them directly from other memory card compatible handsets, PCs and other devices.

- vObject compatible software is required to use the data of vObjects on a PC or other device.
- Depending on the contents of vObjects, the exchange of vObjects between a vObject compatible handset and PC or other device may not be possible.
- When vObjects include many characters, all vObjects may not be able to be sent or received.
- Depending on the software used, vObjects may not be displayed properly.

Creating a vObject

Display a Phone Book (chapter 4)/Calendar (page 13-21)/Tasks (page 13-30)/Message (page 15-12)/ Bookmark (page 16-6)/Notepad (page 13-19) data Creating One vObject

Creating Multiple vObjects

Press ☑ (Menu)→Export→ ■→Select Multi→ ■→Select files
→ ■→ (Save)/ (Export)

Creating All Files as vObjects

Press \bigcirc (Menu) $\rightarrow Export \rightarrow \bigcirc$ $\rightarrow All \rightarrow \bigcirc$

2 Select *Phone MemorylData FolderlMemory Card*→

Select a folder→

•

Importing a vObject into a Function

Main menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Other Documents

Importing One vObject

Select a vObject→ w (Menu)→To Phone Book/To Cal./Tasks/
To Message/To Bookmarks/To Notepad→ →One→ ■
Importing Multiple vObjects

Press $\[igotimes (Menu) \rightarrow To\ Phone\ Book/To\ Cal./Tasks/To\ Message/To\ Bookmarks/To\ Notepad <math>\[igotimes \] \] \rightarrow Select\ VObjects \] \rightarrow \[\[\] \] (Save)$

qiT

 If a vObject includes Phone Book entries with pictures, pictures exceeding W112 × H112 are not saved.

Editing Files & Folders

- You cannot create a folder with the same name as another folder/file in the same folder.
- ◆ You cannot use the following single-byte symbols, pictographs and line break icon "◄" for a folder/file name. "\/¥:;?" <> |. *

Adding Folders

A new folder can be created in the *Pictures*, *Ring Song* • *Tone*, *Music*, *Videos*, *Books*, *Flash*(*R*), *Main Menu*, *Gamendeco* or *Other Documents* folders.

Main menu Data Folder

- **1** Select a folder→
- **2** Select a file $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ (Menu) \rightarrow Create Folder $\rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **3** Enter a folder name→

Tip

You can also create folders by pressing (Menu) and selecting *Create Folder* while the Downloaded item in a folder or a folder itself is selected.

Changing Folder/File Name

Main menu

Data Folder

Changing Folder Name

Select the folder you created → ☑ (Menu) → *Rename Folder* → ■

→Enter a folder name → ■

 If folder security is set (page 9-15), a window appears in which you enter your security code for the operation (page 1-22) after you select Rename Folder

Changing File Name

Select a file $\rightarrow \mathbb{F}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Rename \rightarrow \blacksquare$ \rightarrow Enter a file name $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Deleting Folders/Files

Deleting Folders

Main Data Folder

- **1** Select the folder you created→¬¬ (Menu)→

 Delete Folder→
 ■
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Deleting Files

Main menu Data Folder

1 Select a folder→

Deleting One File

Select a file \rightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow $Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow $One \rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow $YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Deleting Multiple Files

Deleting All Files

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow **Delete** \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow **All** \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22) \rightarrow **YES** \rightarrow \bigcirc

Tip

 If you try to delete a picture or melody file which is used for function settings, a confirmation window appears. If you delete the file, the setting is reset to the default.

Moving Folders

Move the folders you created to the handset or the memory card.

Main menu Data Folder

- 1 Select the folder you created→¬¬ (Menu)→Move Folder→□
- 2 Enter your security code (page 1-22)

Tip

- If you try to move a folder containing a picture or melody file which is
 used for function settings, a confirmation window appears. If you move
 the folder, the setting is reset to the default.
- A file with a name using more than 32 characters cannot be moved.
 Change the file name or omit the file from the folder to move.

Moving Files

Move files stored in the handset or the memory card to another folder.

Main menu Data Folder

1 Select a folder→

Moving One File

Select a file $\rightarrow \mathbb{F}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Move \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$ $\rightarrow One \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$

Moving Multiple Files

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow Move \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select Multi \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select files \rightarrow \bigcirc (Move)

Moving All Files

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow *Move* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow *All* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22)

- **2** Select *Phone Memory Memory Card*→

 ■
- **3** Select the destination folder \rightarrow \bigcirc

Creating a New Folder to which a File is Moved

Press ☐ (Create)→Enter a folder name→

Note

- If Details indicate that the file is *Unavailable* for forward or memory card transfer cannot be moved to other folders.
- When you move a still picture file taken in Digital mode to the memory card, or a music file with MPEG-4 format (.3GP, .MP4 and .M4A) to another folder, select a fixed folder first and then select a destination folder.

Tip

 If you try to move a picture or melody file which is used for function settings, a confirmation window appears. If you move the file, the setting is reset to the default.

Copying Folders

Copy the folders you created to the handset or the memory card.

Main menu Data Folder

- 1 Select the folder you created→☞ (Menu)→Copy Folder→

 ■
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)→*Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→ ■
- **3** Select the destination folder→

Tip

A file with a name using more than 32 characters cannot be copied.
 Change the file name or omit the file from the folder to copy.

Copying Files

Copy files stored in the handset or the memory card to another folder.

Main menu Data Folder

1 Select a folder→

Copying One File

Copying Multiple Files

Press ☑ (Menu)→*Copy*→ ■ → *Select Multi*→ ■ → Select files → ■ → 圖 (Copy)

Copying All Files

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow *Copy* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow *All* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22)

2 Select *Phone Memory|Memory Card*→

■

3 Select the destination folder→

Creating a New Folder to which a File is Copied

Press ☑ (Create)→Enter a folder name→ ■

Note

- If Details indicate that the file is *Unavailable* for forward, the file
 cannot be copied. However, files in *My Pictograms* folder may be
 able to be copied even if Details indicate that it is *Unavailable* for the
 forward.
- When you copy a still picture file taken in Digital mode to the memory card, or a music file with MPEG-4 format (.3GP and .MP4) to another folder, select a fixed folder first and then select a destination folder.

Setting Folder Security

Set Security Lock ON to require security code entry when accessing files.

Main menu Data Folder

Select the folder you created→¬ (Menu)→
Security Lock→
■

2 Enter your security code (page 1-22)

3 Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Other Functions

Playing Slide Show

Display picture files in succession about every two seconds.

Main Data Folder Pictures

1 Select a file $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ (Menu) \rightarrow Change $View \rightarrow \blacksquare$

2 Select *Slideshow*→

Changing the Order of Files within the Selected Folder

Main menu Data Folder

1 Select a folder→

2 Select a file $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ (Menu) \rightarrow Change $View \rightarrow \blacksquare$ \rightarrow Sort by $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

3 Select a sort option→■

• Files in the memory card cannot be sorted by titles.

Infrared	10-2
Using Infrared	
Activating Infrared	10-3
Using USB	10-5
Connecting to a PC	10-7

Infrared

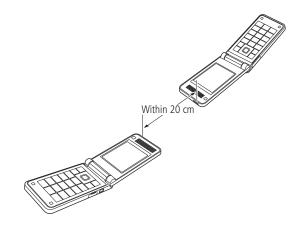
Use infrared to exchange the Calendar data of your handset, Phone Book entries of your handset, memory card or USIM card, pictures/videos taken or recorded with the camera and Data Folder data that can be forwarded with an infrared compatible handset, PC or other device.

Tip

 The infrared function of your handset complies with IrMC 1.1, but some files may not be exchanged.

Precautions

- A dirty Infrared Port may cause an infrared communication failure. If the Infrared Port is dirty, gently wipe it with a soft cloth while making sure not to scratch the port.
- Do not move the devices until the file transfer is complete.
- Direct sunlight or fluorescent light may interfere with infrared communication.
- If the handset receives a call/video call while it is sending or receiving files via infrared communication, a fixed incoming image is displayed and a fixed melody ringtone sounds. If you answer the call, the data communication is canceled.
- USB communications unavailable during infrared transfers.
- Bring the Infrared Port of your handset to within 20 cm of the Infrared Port
 of the destination device and align both ports. Make sure no objects are
 placed between them.
- Hot Status and Circle Talk are unavailable during file transfers.



Using Infrared

Files can be sent/received and connected to a dial-up connection via infrared communication. The " indicator appears at the top of the display during transfer.

About the Authentication Password

The authentication password (4 digits) is for sending and receiving all data by infrared communication. When sending or receiving all data, the same authentication password needs to be entered for both the sending and receiving devices.

Activating Infrared

Set the handset so that it is connected by other compatible devices via infrared communication.



- **1** Select $ON \rightarrow \blacksquare$
 - lacktriangle To cancel the infrared communication standby, select OFF.

Note

 If the handset does not communicate via infrared communication for three minutes after the infrared communication is ON, the infrared communication standby is canceled automatically.

Sending Data

- 1 Access a function that supports infrared
- **2** Select a file $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ (Menu) \rightarrow Sendl Send vCard $\rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **3** Select *Via Infrared*→

Note

- The files without transfer permission and files in Saved Pages cannot be sent.
- Removal of the memory card during file transfer from the memory card may result in loss or damage of files on the memory card.

Tip

 A part of vObject information may be deleted or changed on some destination devices.

Receiving Data

The handset can receive files when the infrared communication setting (left) is $\boldsymbol{\mathit{ON}}.$

- 1 In Standby, receive a connection request from another infrared compatible device
- **2** Select $YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$
 - lacktriangle To reject the reception of files, select NO.
 - When the handset receives a Phone Book entry, schedule or task, select YES to save it on your Phone Book, schedule or task.
- **3** Select *Phone MemorylMemory Card*→

Tip

- Some vObject information may not be received.
- Hot Status and Circle Talk are unavailable during file transfers.
- When files other than vObjects are received, they are registered in a certain folder depending on the file format (extension) (page 9-3). If the handset receives a file with the same name as a file registered in Data Folder, the name of the received file may be changed.

Sending All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries in your handset, schedules on the Calendar or tasks can be sent to another infrared compatible handset. Enter the same authentication password on both the sending and receiving devices.

• Some devices may not be able to receive or properly display the entries.



- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select *Phone BooklCal./Tasks*→
 - When sending Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to include images saved to Phone Book. Select Without Image to send the Phone Book entries without images.
 - When transferring schedule/task files, a message appears. Select Without Past to delete past files.
- **3** Enter your authentication password (page 10-2)

Receiving All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries, schedules of the Calendar or tasks can be received from another infrared compatible handset. Enter the same authentication password on both the sending and receiving devices.

The handset can receive files when the infrared communication setting (page 10-3) is ON.

- 1 In Standby, receive a connection request from another infrared compatible device
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **3** Enter your authentication password (page 10-2)
- **4** Select $Add \rightarrow \bullet$

Overwriting All Entries

Select *Overwrite* $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow *YES* $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

Tip

 While sending/receiving files, Hot Status and Circle Talk cannot be used even if the IP service setting (page 12-7) is ON.

Using Infrared for Dial-up Connections

The handset can communicate with a PC via infrared communication if the PC is compatible with infrared communication, and the PC can access the Internet via your handset. For details about settings and operations of a modem on a PC, see the manual for the PC.

The handset can use dial-up connections when the infrared communication setting (page 10-3) is *ON*.

In Standby, receive a connection request from an infrared compatible PC

Note

 The handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.

Using USB

Use the USB cable to connect your handset to a PC to transfer files. You can also check the Data Folder of the handset on your PC.

Getting Started

- Install the USB driver before connecting the USB cable.
- When using a USB cable to connect your handset to a PC, be sure to directly insert the plug of the USB cable into the USB port of the PC.
- You cannot use USB functions/settings other than the charge function during infrared communication.

Switching to Data Transfer Mode While Connected with USB

Open your handset in Standby, and use the USB cable to connect your handset to a $PC \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$



Tip

- A confirmation window appears while an S! Appli set as the Screensaver is active.
- In the following cases, your handset does not switch to data transfer mode when you connect it to a PC via a USB cable.
 - The Password Lock is activated.
 - · Your handset is closed.
 - · Memory card is not inserted.
 - The display setting of the confirmation window (page 10-7) is set to **Do not Display**.

Switching to Data Transfer Mode from the Main Menu

Switch to data transfer mode manually from the Main menu if the handset does not automatically switch to data transfer mode when connected by USB, or when you want to establish a connection again after canceling the data transfer mode.

- 1 Use the USB cable to connect your handset to a PC
- 2 In Standby, press \longrightarrow Settings \longrightarrow Connectivity \longrightarrow \longrightarrow USB \longrightarrow Data Transfer \longrightarrow \bigcirc

Tip

- Offline mode is set while your handset is in data transfer mode. If the handset cannot switch to offline mode because it is communicating with another device, a confirmation window appears.
- A warning window appears if the memory card is not properly formatted. Format the memory card and perform the operation again.
- If the USB cable is unplugged while the transferring data window is shown, a confirmation window appears and the handset is disconnected from the device.

Sending Data

- 1 Switch your handset to data transfer mode
- **2** Follow the instructions on the PC

Note

 Do not remove the memory card while the transferring data window is displayed.

Canceling the Data Transfer Mode

Use the connected PC's function to remove an external device

Setting Display of the Data Transfer Mode Confirmation Window

Set whether to display the confirmation window for switching to data transfer mode.



1 Select *Display|Do not Display*→ ■

Tip

 If Do not Display is set for the display setting of the confirmation window for switching to data transfer mode, the window does not appear even if a USB cable is connected to your handset in Standby. You can also switch to data transfer mode from the Main menu (page 10-6).

Connecting to a PC

Using a USB Cable for Dial-up Connections

Use a USB cable to connect your handset to a PC and then access the Internet, etc. For details on the configuration/operation of the PC modem, refer to the instruction manual for the PC.

Note

 The handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.

Using a USB Cable for Charging

While your handset is on, you can charge the battery pack if you connect your handset and a PC using a USB cable. In order to charge the battery of the handset from a PC, turn the battery setting *ON*.



Select $ONIOFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Note

- To charge using the USB cable provided, turn on the PC and the handset.
- Charging may not be possible depending on the connection settings of the PC.
- If the handset and PC are connected with a USB cable, either the PC battery or handset battery is consumed depending on the battery setting, regardless of whether they are communicating data.

ON : PC battery is usedOFF : Handset battery is used

Tic

 Compared to using the AC charger or In-Car charger (optional), it may take longer to charge the battery through a USB cable.

Sound Settings	11-2
Switching Manner Modes	11-2
Customizing Original Manner Mode	11-3
Ringtone, Volume & Vibration Settings	11-4
Display Settings	11-6
Standby Display	11-6
Main Screens	11-7
Caller ID	11-8
Font Settings	11-9
Setting Ku-man for Standby (Japanese Only)	11-9
Backlight Settings	11-10
External Light Settings	11-11
Twinkle Light Setting 815T	11-11
Language Setting	11-12
Key Setting	11-12
Setting the Navigation Key Shortcuts	11-12
Setting the Side Key Function	11-13
Sub Menu View Setting	
Answer Type Settings	11-13
Setting the Open to Talk	11-13
Setting Any Key Answer	11-13
Rejecting Incoming Calls	
Rejecting Specific Incoming Calls	11-14
Adding Phone Numbers to the Rejection List	11-14
Caller ID Setting	
Automatically Hiding/Showing Caller ID	11-15
Priority Setting	11-15
Memory Settings	
Confirming the Memory Status	11-16
External Device Settings	
Network Settings	11-16
Retrieving Network Information	11-16

ocation	11-16
Saving a Map URL	11-16
Positioning Lock	11-17
Location Information Send Settings	11-17

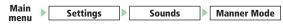
Settings

Sound Settings

Switching Manner Modes

Manner mode can be selected from the following types.

Manner mode	Description	
Silent (😭)	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker.	
Alarms (🍇)	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker other than the alarm tone.	
Original 1 to 3	Customizes the manner mode setting. The following items can be set individually: Ringtone (Ringtone Vol., Vibration) Alarm (Alarm Volume, Vibration) Calendar (Alarm Volume, Vibration) SI Appli (S! Appli Vol.) Sound Vol. Battery Ans. Phone	



Select Switch $Mode \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$ \rightarrow Select a mode $\rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$

Settings for Each Type of Manner Mode

Manner mode is set as follows by default:

	Item	Silent	Alarms	Original 1 to 3
	Voice Call			Silent
	Video Call			
	Message			
	DeliveryCheck	Silent	Silent	
	Missed Call	Siletit		
Ringtone Vol.	Circle Talk			
VOI.	Hot Status			
	S! Appli			
	Alarm	Silent	Volume under Alarm Tone (page 13-16)	Silent
	Calendar	Silent	Silent	Silent
	Voice Call			Pattern 1
	Video Call			
	Message			
Vibration	DeliveryCheck	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	
	Missed Call			
	Circle Talk			
	Hot Status			

	Item	Silent	Alarms	Original 1 to 3
Vibration (Continued)	Alarm	Pattern 1	Vibration under Alarm Tone (page 13-16)	Pattern 1
	Calendar	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1
Feeling Settings		Vibration under Feeling Settings (page 11-5)	Vibration under Feeling Settings (page 11-5)	ON
Sound Vol.		Silent	Silent	Silent
Effects (Keypad Tone, Power On, Power Off, Opening Tone, Closing Tone)		OFF	OFF	OFF
Battery*		OFF	OFF	OFF
Ans. Phone		Setting under Answering Machine (page 13-18)	Setting under Answering Machine (page 13-18)	ON

^{*} The alarm is heard from the earpiece only during calls.

Customizing Original Manner Mode
Main ■ Settings ■ Sounds ■ Manner Mode
1 Select <i>Original Mode</i> →
2 Select an original mode you want to set→
● Select an original mode, press ☑ (Menu), and select <i>Rename</i> to change the name for the original mode. Setting the Ringtone Volume
Select $Ringtone \rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow $Ringtone Vol. \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Adjust the volume \rightarrow \bigcirc$
Setting the Vibration for Voice/Video Calls, Delivery Check, Missed Calls/Circle Talk Calls /Hot Status Notifications Select Ringtone → ■ → Select an item → ■ → Vibration → ■ →
Select a vibration pattern → Setting the Vibration for Receiving Messages
Select $Ringtone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Message \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Vibration \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Pattern \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a vibration pattern \rightarrow \blacksquare$
Setting the Vibration for Receiving Feeling Messages Select $Ringtone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Message \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Vibration \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Feeling Settings \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$
Setting the Alarm Volume Select $Alarm/Calendar \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Alarm\ Volume \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$
Adjust the volume→ Setting Vibration for the Alarm Select Alarm/Calendar→ Select Alarm/Calendar→
Select a vibration pattern → ■

Setting the S! Appli Volume

Select $S! Appli \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Adjust the volume \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the Sound Volume

Select **Sound Vol.** $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ \rightarrow Adjust the volume $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the Effects/Battery Alarm/Answering Machine Select $Effects/Battery/Ans.\ Phone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

3 Press ᠍ (OK)

Ringtone, Volume & Vibration Settings

Ringtones and ringtone volume can be set for each mode. Some items may not be displayed in some modes.

In the following situations, sounds may be played at the level 3 volume (the maximum volume for *Ascending Volume* or *Descending Volume*) when the handset is open:

- When Ringtone Vol. is set to Level 4, Level 5, Ascending Volume or Descending Volume.
- When **Sound Vol.** is set to **Level 4** or **Level 5**.
- When *Speaker Vol.* is set to *Level 4* or *Level 5*.

Ringtone

Main
■ Settings
■ Sounds

- **1** Select *Incoming* → **Select** an item →
- **2** Select *Ringtone*→

Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Ringtone

Select *Patterns*/*Melodies*→ ■ → Select a ringtone → ■

Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Ringtone

Select $Phone \ Memory/Memory \ Card \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select \ a \ file \rightarrow \bigcirc$ (twice)

 If the playback start point is included in the selected file, perform the following:

Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card* \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select the file \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select the playback start point \rightarrow \blacksquare

Setting Keitaideco Themes

Select **Keitaideco**→ (twice)

Note

 If you use SMAF data which includes an image as a ringtone, the image may not be displayed correctly.

Ringtone Volume

Adjust the ringtone volume in five levels or set to Silent. The ringtone volume can be set so that it gradually goes up (Ascending Volume) or down (Descending Volume).

• The ringtone volume in manner mode (page 11-2) cannot be adjusted.



- **1** Select $Incoming \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **2** Select *Ringtone Vol.*→ → Adjust the volume → ■

Ring Time

Main
■ Settings
■ Sounds

1 Select *Incoming*→

2 Select MessagelDeliveryChecklMissed CalllHot Status

→ • Duration → •

Specifying Time by Direct Entry

Select **Set Duration** $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ \rightarrow Enter the ringing duration (1 to 99 seconds) $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Vibration

Set vibration to notify of incoming calls/messages.

Main Settings Sounds

1 Select *Incoming* → ■ → Select an item → ■

Setting Vibration for Receiving Messages

Select $Message \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Vibration \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Pattern \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select a vibration pattern $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting Vibration for Receiving Feeling Messages

Select $Message \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Vibration \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Feeling Settings \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

2 Select *Vibration*→

Select a vibration pattern

→

Output

Description

Select a vibration pattern

Sound Volume

Adjust playback volume for melody files and other sounds (volume levels 1 through 5 or silent).

Main Settings Sounds

Select Sound Vol.→

■

2 Adjust the volume→

Setting Earpiece Volume

Adjust earpiece volume.

Main Menu Settings Sounds

Select $Earpiece\ Vol. \rightarrow lacktriangledown$ \rightarrow Adjust the volume \rightarrow lacktriangledown

Tip

 When the volume is adjusted during a call (pages 2-7, 5-3), the volume is reset after the call is terminated.

Speaker Volume

Adjust speaker volume.

Main settings ► Sounds

Select Speaker Vol. $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Adjust the volume \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Sound Effects/Sound Effects Volume

Customize Sound Effects (Keypad tone, Power On/Off tones and Open/Close tones) and adjust volume.

1 Select Sound Effects \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow \bigcirc

2 Select *Tone Type*→

Setting the Original Tone Preinstalled in Your Handset Select $Original \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting a Melody Preinstalled in Your Handset
Select Melodies→ → Select a melody→ ●

Setting a Tone Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card
Select Phone Memory/Memory Card → ● Select a file→
● (twice)

3 Select *Tone Volume* $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ \rightarrow Adjust the volume $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Note

You cannot set files which include an image.

Display Settings

Standby Display

Set the wallpaper and clock on the Main Display and the clock on the external display.

• For details on Date&Time setting, see page 1-18.

Wallpaper (Main Display)

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Idle Screen

1 Select Main Display→ ■ → Wallpaper → ■ → Picture → ■

Setting an Image Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Wallpaper

Select **Preset**→ **(twice)**

Setting an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Wallpaper

Select $Phone\ Memory/Memory\ Card \rightarrow \bigcirc$ Select a file \rightarrow Use \bigcirc to adjust the position of the image to clip \rightarrow \bigcirc (Cut) \rightarrow \bigcirc

Setting a Keitaideco Image

Select $Keitaideco \rightarrow \blacksquare$ (twice)

Tip

- When you select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*, you can adjust images, such as resizing and rotating them, by pressing (Resize) (page 6-22).
- When you select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*, you can set an image with a size of W640 × H480 (W480 × H640) or less by pressing .

Wallpaper (Animation)

1 Select Main Display → • Wallpaper → • → Animation → •

To Specify the Display Method

Select $Design \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a pattern \rightarrow \blacksquare$ (twice) $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (Set)

To Specify the Display Sequence

Select $Order \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$ the display sequence $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \boxtimes (Set)$

2 Select Image → ■ → Images List → ■ → Select an image list → ■ (Set)

 Data Folder images must be added to an image list in advance. Up to five frames can be added for each image list.

Press (Edit)→Select an image list item→ → Phone Memory/
Memory Card → → Select an image → (twice)→ (Set)

To Display the Images in the Selected Folder as an Animation

Select $Select Folder \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a folder \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \boxtimes (Set)$

To Specify the Image Preinstalled in the Handset Select *Preset*→ □→ □ (Set)

Setting Clock (Main Display)

Main

Settings

Display

Idle Screen

Select Main Display → ● → Others → ● → Select a clock type → ●

Setting Wallpaper & Clock (External Display)

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Idle Screen

Select *Ext. Display* \rightarrow Select a clock type \rightarrow

Main Screens

Designs on each screen of the Display can be changed.

Setting the Icons/Images of the Main Screen

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Main Screens

Select Deco IDeco → •

Setting Icons/Images Preinstalled in Your Handset for Screen Decoration

Select *Original/Ku-man*→ (twice)

Setting Icons/Images Saved to Data Folder for Screen Decoration

Select **Phone Memory** \longrightarrow Select a file for screen decoration \longrightarrow (twice) \longrightarrow **YES** \longrightarrow \bigcirc

Setting Keitaideco Icon/Images

Select *Keitaideco*→ (twice)

Tip

- If the Tab View is applied for the Main menu (page 1-21), you can change designs of the Tab View by pressing (Menu) and selecting Gamendeco.

Settings

Setting the Image for Incoming Calls

1 Select *In-Calls*→ → *Voice Call/Video Call*→ ●

Setting an Image Preinstalled in Your Handset for Incoming Calls

Select *Original/Ku-man*→ (twice)

Setting an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card for Incoming Calls

Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card* \longrightarrow Select a file \longrightarrow Use - to adjust the position of the image to clip \longrightarrow - (Cut) \longrightarrow -

Setting a Keitaideco Image

Select *Keitaideco*→ (twice)

• Keitaideco can be set when Voice Call is selected.

Note

- If you receive a call from a person whose picture is saved to Phone Book and the picture view setting (page 11-9) is ON, the picture is displayed regardless of the incoming image settings. However, if you receive a call from a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-4) set to ON when Secret Mode (page 12-6) is set to Hide, the incoming image is displayed.
- If a video file is set as a ringtone (page 11-4), the incoming image is not displayed.

Setting the Image for Receiving Messages

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Main Screens

1 Select $Messages \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Receiving/DeliveryCheck \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting an Image Preinstalled in Your Handset for Receiving Messages

Select $Original/Ku-man \rightarrow \bigcirc$ (twice)

Setting an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card for Receiving Messages

Setting a Keitaideco Image

Select *Keitaideco*→ (twice)

• Keitaideco can be set when *Receiving* is selected.

Setting the Download/Power On/Power Off Screen

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Main Screens

1 Select Download|Power On|Power Off→ ■

2 Select *OriginallKu-man*→ (twice)

Setting the Display at Once

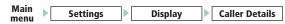
Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Main Screens

1 Press \square (All) \rightarrow *Originall Ku-man* \rightarrow \blacksquare

Caller ID

External Display Setting

Select whether or not you want the External Display to show the name of a caller saved to Phone Book when receiving a call.



1 Select *Ext. Display* \rightarrow *ON/OFF* \rightarrow \bigcirc

Setting the Picture View

Set whether you want a picture to be displayed or not when you receive a voice or a video call from a person who is saved to Phone Book with a picture (page 4-3).

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Caller Details

1 Select $Picture \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Note

- When Picture is set to ON, the incoming image is not displayed. If you
 receive a call from a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-4)
 set to ON when Secret Mode (page 12-6) is set to Hide, the picture is
 not displayed.
- If a video file is set as a ringtone (page 11-4), the picture is not displayed.

Switching between the 12-hour and 24-hour Clock



1 Select 12 hourl24 hour→

Font Settings

The size and color of the text displayed on the Display can be changed.

Setting the Font Size

Select $Font \ Size \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select \ a \ display \ you \ want to set \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select \ a \ font \ size \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the Font Color

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Font Settings

Select Font Color→ ■ → Select a color pattern → ■

Setting the Font Size Collectively

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Font Settings

Setting Ku-man for Standby (Japanese Only)

3D animation character Ku-man is displayed in Standby. Ku-man communicates with you with the various outfits and gestures depending on the season, time of the day, and other conditions.

11

Settings

Main menu ▶ [設定 (Settings)] ▶ | 待受く一まん (Idle Screen)

1 Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Note

- If the Language (page 11-12) setting is *English* or a language other than Japanese is selected in the Automatic settings, or Live Monitor is selected to display new information (page 13-4), Ku-man cannot be displayed in Standby.
- If Flash® is specified as Wallpaper (page 11-6), Ku-man and Flash® image cannot be displayed at the same time in Standby.

© Dora communications

Backlight Settings

Adjust backlight brightness and illumination time.

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Backlight

1 Select *Displays*→

Illumination Time (Main Display)

Select *Lighting Time* → ■ →Enter time (0 to 60 seconds) → ■

Setting the Brightness

Select $Brightness \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a level \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Media Player Backlight

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Backlight

1 Select Media Player→ ■ → Always ON|Always OFF|
Same as Phone→ ■

Tip

- If you select Same as Phone, the setting follows Displays (left) of the backlight settings.
- Backlight during music playback is provided in accordance with the *Displays* settings.

Setting the Display Power Saving

Save battery power by setting the handset to turn off the display after a specified time of inactivity elapses.

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Backlight

Select Power Saving→ → Power Saving → →
Select a display time → ●

Keypad Illumination Time

1 Select Power Saving $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Keypad \ Light \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

External Light Settings

Setting the Notification External Light

If you have unchecked information (missed calls, unread messages and Voice Mail), the external light flashes when your handset is closed. You can set the external light not to flash.



- **1** Select *Notification*→
- **2** Select a type of unchecked information $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select a color/ $OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare \blacksquare$

Setting the Incoming External Light

Set the external light to flash when you have an incoming voice call, video call, message or set the external light not to flash.

- **1** Select *Incoming*→
- **2** Select an item $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select a color/ $OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the External Light for Receiving Messages

Select Message
ightharpoonup
igh

Setting an External Light for Receiving Feeling Messages Select Message
ightharpoonup
ightha

Note

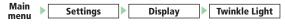
 If the external light (pages 4-4, 4-7) is set for each Phone Book entry, the settings on Phone Book are given priority.

Twinkle Light Setting 815T

Twinkle Light is a type of illumination that notifies you of incoming calls, etc. by flashing the LEDs on the handset in predetermined colors and patterns. You can also disable Twinkle Light.

- In addition to the preset lighting patterns, you can also store your own original patterns.
- If an S! Appli set as the Screensaver (page 17-6) is running, Twinkle Light only operates during calls.

Setting Twinkle Light



- **1** Select *Settings*→
- 2 Select the incoming call type → □ →

 Preset/Original → □ → Select a pattern → □

 Setting Twinkle Light When the Handset is Open

 Select Opening → □ → Preset/Original → □ → Select a pattern →
 □

Setting Twinkle Light When the Handset is Closed
Select Closing → ■→Preset/Original→ ■→Select a pattern→
■

Setting Twinkle Light During Calls

Select $In\ Call \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Preset/Original \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select\ a\ pattern \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting Twinkle Light When the Side Key is Held Down

Select $Side\ Key \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Preset/Original \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select a pattern $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

 If you select *Twinkle Light* in the side key settings (page 11-13), the handset flashes in the Twinkle Light pattern when you press and hold with the handset closed.

Setting All the Twinkle Light Settings at Once

 \boxtimes (All) \rightarrow **Preset/Original** \rightarrow \bigcirc Select a pattern \rightarrow \bigcirc

Disabling Twinkle Light

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Delivery/Opening/Closing/In Call/Side $Key \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Disabling All the Twinkle Light Settings at Once $(A|I) \rightarrow OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Tip

 You can view the default settings of each item in Default Settings (page 21-6).

Creating Original Twinkle Light Patterns

You can create your own original Twinkle Light colors and patterns (up to 8 patterns).

Main menu Settings Display Twinkle Light

Design Light

- **1** Select the name for your original Twinkle Light →
- 2 Select *Rename*→ → Enter the Twinkle Light name→ →

- **3** Select Create Color $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ Select the colors $\rightarrow \bigcirc$
 - Use the keypad to choose from the preset colors.
 - Use ••• to adjust the color density.
- **4.** Select *Pattern*→ → Select a Twinkle Light pattern→ •

Tip

 While you are selecting, the handset flashes in the selected Twinkle Light colors and patterns so that you can check the actual colors.

Language Setting

Change the language displayed on your handset.

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings ▶ 言語選択

- **1** Select language→
 - If you select Automatic, the handset selects the language set for the language setting in the USIM card automatically.

Key Setting

Setting the Navigation Key Shortcuts

Change the functions accessed when you press the navigation keys from Standby.

Main menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings ► Navigation Keys

Changing Functions Assigned to the Navigation Keys

Press \longrightarrow Select the function you want to assign to \bigcirc \longrightarrow Select the function you want to assign to \bigcirc \longrightarrow Select the function you want to assign to \bigcirc \longrightarrow

• The remaining function is assigned automatically to •.

Resetting Functions Assigned to the Navigation Keys
Press [P] (Menu) $\rightarrow Reset \rightarrow [P] \rightarrow YES \rightarrow [P]$

Setting the Side Key Function

You can assign a function to the Side Key. You can then access the selected function by pressing and holding the Side Key with the handset closed.

Main menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings ► Side Key

1 Select Manner Mode/Torch/Twinkle Light (page 11-11)/ Balance (page 20-9)→ ■

Tip

- Twinkle Light flashes in the pattern specified in the Twinkle Light Side Key setting (page 11-11).
- To view your Balance, you must select this in the Display Balance settings (page 20-8).

Sub Menu View Setting

If more than two sub menu items are displayed when pressing $\[\]$ (Menu), set the window so that the item selected most recently is displayed on top.



1 Select Show|Hide→

Note

 This setting is disabled for Circle Talk, Circle Talk Call Log and Hot Status.

Answer Type Settings

Setting the Open to Talk

This feature allows you to answer an incoming call or Circle Talk call by simply opening your handset.



Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting Any Key Answer

If Any Key Answer is set to ON, you can answer incoming voice/video calls and Circle Talk calls with any of \bigcirc to \bigcirc , and \bigcirc and \bigcirc (for video call).



1 Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Rejecting Incoming Calls

Set to reject calls with no Caller ID or calls from pay phones. Also reject calls from the specified phone numbers by adding numbers in the rejection list.

Rejecting Specific Incoming Calls

If a call or a Circle Talk call is received from a phone number for which Reject Calls is set, the ringtone does not play and your handset does not vibrate, but Information Prompt (page 1-10) appears and the call can be confirmed in Received Call log (page 2-9).

 If the incoming call barring (page 14-8) is set, the call barring is given priority.

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Reject Calls

Enter your security code (page 1-22)

Rejecting Calls from the Specified Phone Numbers

Select Specific $\#s \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Rejecting Calls from Phone Numbers Not in Phone Book

Select $Unknown \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID

Select *Withheld* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow *ON/OFF* \rightarrow \bigcirc

Rejecting Calls from Pay Phones Select $Payphone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Rejecting Calls for Which the Caller ID Cannot be Displayed

Select $Unavailable \rightarrow \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Adding Phone Numbers to the Rejection List

Add phone numbers to the rejection list to reject calls from those phone numbers.

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Reject Calls

- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select Specific $\#s \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Reject List \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **3** Press

 (Add)

Selecting a Phone Number from Phone Book

Select **Phone Book** $\rightarrow \mathbb{O}$ Select an entry $\rightarrow \mathbb{O}$ Select a phone number $\rightarrow \mathbb{O}$ (twice)

Entering a Phone Number Directly

Select *Phone Number* → ■ →Enter a phone number → ■ (twice) **Selecting a Phone Number from the Call Log**

Select $Call Log \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a phone number \rightarrow \blacksquare$ (twice)

Tip

If a phone number is already added, select Reject List and press (Menu) to perform the following:

Edit/Delete

Caller ID Setting

Set whether to notify the other party of your phone number when you make a call.

Automatically Hiding/Showing Caller ID

Main
Main
Settings
Call Settings
Show My Number
Show My Number

1 Select Show My ID/Hide My ID/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc

Note

- If you select Show My ID, your phone number is always displayed on a phone of the other party regardless of whether you subscribe to Caller ID service or not. If you select Hide My ID, your phone number is not displayed on the phone of the other party regardless of whether you subscribe to the service or not. If you select OFF, the settings you chose when you subscribed to the service apply.
- For Circle Talk calls, the other party will know your phone number regardless of the settings.

Tip

Instead of the automatic setting, press (Menu) and select Hide My
 ID or Show My ID while a phone number is displayed before making
 a call.

Priority Setting

Setting how your handset behaves when it receives a call or message while it is operating.

Main Settings Priority

Select the function under operation→

Setting the Priority Operation While Media Player is Playing Select $Media\ Player \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Continue/Pause \rightarrow \bigcirc$ Setting the Priority Operation While S! Appli is Running Select $S!\ Appli \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select\ an\ item \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Pause\ Apps/$ $Continue\ Apps \rightarrow \bigcirc$

- **2** Select an item→
- **3** Select Pause|Continue→ ■

Settings

Memory Settings

Confirming the Memory Status

Confirm the memory usage status of your handset and memory card.

Main Settings Memory Memory Status menu

Select an item→

- Press ☑ (Count) to check number of files saved (unavailable when checking memory card capacity).
- For details on formatting a memory card, see page 8-4.

External Device Settings

Set the access point name (APN) of the network information to perform packet transmission from an external device such as a PC. Up to ten access point names (APN) can be set.

Main Call Settings **External Device** Settinas

Select $Empty \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$ the access point name $(APN) \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Network Settings

Retrieving Network Information

The screen for retrieving network information automatically disappears after you retrieve it once. To change the settings, retrieve network information from the Main menu

Main Retrieve NW Info Settings Connectivity menu

Select $YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Location

Saving a Map URL

Set the map provider to show a map on the Internet.

Main Location Settings menu

Select *Map URL Settings* \rightarrow

Saving a Map URL

Select an unregistered item \rightarrow $\boxed{}$ $\boxed{}$ (Menu) \rightarrow $\boxed{}$ $\boxed{}$ $\boxed{}$ Enter a URL →

Editing the Name of Map URL

 \rightarrow

Editing the Map URL

Select a map URL \rightarrow [\checkmark] (Menu) \rightarrow Edit URL \rightarrow [\bullet] \rightarrow YES \rightarrow [\bullet] →Edit the URL→

Setting a Map URL

Select a map URL→

Deleting a Map URL

Select a map URL \rightarrow $\[\]$ (Menu) \rightarrow **Delete** \rightarrow $\[\]$ \rightarrow **YES** \rightarrow $\[\]$ $\[\]$

Note

• The preset map URL cannot be edited or deleted.

Positioning Lock

Disable positioning.



- **1** Select *Positioning Lock*→ ■
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **3** Select $ONIOFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Location Information Send Settings

Set whether location information is sent automatically when a location information request is received while you are obtaining information.

Main menu ► Settings ► Location

- **1** Select LocationProperty $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)

Displaying a Confirmation Window Every Time Select $Always Ask \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Sending the Location Information without Having a Confirmation Window Displayed

Select **Send**→

Not Sending the Location Information without Having a Confirmation Window Displayed

Select **Do not Send**→

Changing the Security Code	12-2
Setting PINs	
Setting PIN Request	12-2
Changing PINs	12-2
Canceling PIN Lock	12-3
Password Lock	12-3
Function Lock	
Biometrics	12-5
Saving User Image	12-5
Setting Biometrics	12-5
Biometric Authentication	12-6
Setting Secret Mode	12-6
IP Service Setting	12-7
Keypad Lock	12-7
Reset Settings	12-8
Restricted Mode	
Restricting Internet Connection	12-9

Changing the Security Code

Do not forget your security code (page 1-22) and do not reveal it to others.
 Write down your security code.

Main
Menu

Settings

Security

Change Password

- 1 Enter your current security code (page 1-22)
- 2 Enter your new security code
- **3** Re-enter your new security code for confirmation

Setting PINs

Setting PIN Request

Set whether you are requested to enter your PIN (page 1-5) to perform verification each time a USIM card is inserted into the handset and the power is turned on. We recommend you to set to ON to prevent unauthorized use by a third party.

Main menu ► Settings ► Security ► PIN Settings

- **2** Enter your PIN→

Changing PINs

Change your PIN/PIN2 (page 1-5). Set PIN Settings (left) to \emph{ON} before you change the PIN.

 Do not forget your PINs and do not reveal them to others. Write down your PINs.



- **1** Select *Change PIN/Change PIN2*→

 ■
- 2 Enter your current PIN/PIN2→

 ■
- 3 Enter your new PIN/PIN2→
 ■
- **4** Re-enter your new PIN/PIN2 for confirmation →

 ■

Canceling PIN Lock

If PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three consecutive times, PIN and PIN2 are locked. To cancel PIN Lock/PIN2 Lock, enter a PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) Code. For details on PUK Codes, contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).

- Open a function requiring PIN entry when the PIN/ PIN2 lock is set
- **2** Enter the PUK/PUK2→●
- **3** Enter your new PIN/PIN2→ ■
- **4** Re-enter your new PIN/PIN2 for confirmation

 → •

Note

 If the personal unblocking key code (PUK) is incorrectly entered ten times in a row, the USIM lock is set. If the USIM lock is set, it cannot be canceled. Contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).

Password Lock

Set Password Lock to prevent others from using your handset. When Password Lock is activated, your security code (page 1-22) or biometric authentication (page 12-6) is required to use the handset. " " "indicator and *Password Lock* appear in Standby when Password Lock is set to ON.

Enter your security code (page 1-22)

Activating Password Lock When You Close Your Handset Select $Phone\ Closed \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Activating Password Lock When Your Handset Goes into Power Saving Mode

Select *Power Saving* \rightarrow \bigcirc $ON/OFF \rightarrow$ \bigcirc

Note

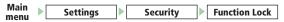
- Unless the Password Lock is OFF, the keys are locked when you perform selected operation.
- To cancel the setting, enter your security code (page 1-22) and temporarily
 unlock the keys. Then set Password Lock to *OFF*. When the biometric
 authentication (page 12-5) is set to *ON*, press or open the handset and
 perform biometric authentication to temporarily unlock the handset.
- Phone Closed locks the handset when you close it in Standby. Power Saving locks the handset when the Display is turned off after a certain amount of time (as set in the power saving settings (page 11-10)) has passed in Standby.
- You cannot make a one-touch call from the Stereo Earphone (optional) while the handset is locked with Password Lock.

Tip

- When the Password Lock is activated, you can still perform the following operations.
 - · Turn the power on and off.
 - Enter the PIN if the *PIN Settings* (page 12-2) is set to *ON*.
 - · Cancel the Password Lock temporarily.
 - Make calls to 110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard).
 - Answer voice calls and video calls (but the Open to Talk and Any Key Answer functions are unavailable).
 - Answer Circle Talk calls (but the Any Key Answer function is unavailable).
 - Stop the alarm (page 13-18).
 - Stop the schedule alarm (page 13-28).
 - Activate the Answering Machine for incoming voice calls (page 2-5).
 - Place calls on hold (page 2-5).
 - Divert calls (page 14-3).
 - Reject calls (page 2-6).
 - Adjust the ringtone volume while a call is being received (pages 2-4, 5-3).
 - Pause the S! Appli set as the Screensaver (page 17-6).
- When the Password Lock is activated, Information Prompt (page 1-10) does not appear.
- " " indicator and Password Lock are not displayed in Standby, if the Password Lock is temporarily canceled after it is set to ON.

Function Lock

Set Function Lock to prevent unauthorized access to Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks functions, Call Log and Sent/Received Log. When Function Lock is set, your security code (page 1-22) must be entered to access these functions/features.



- Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select a function $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ $\rightarrow Lock/Unlock \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Biometrics

Unlock Password Lock (page 12-3), using the Biometrics feature. Handset identifies user by verifying the user's face against a pre-saved image.

- Save up to three users (up to five pictures per user).
- Security Code is required to set Biometrics or save User image. For Security purposes, it is also recommended that you change your Security Code (page 12-2).
- S! FeliCa is available, even when Biometrics feature is enabled.

Saving User Image

Main menu ► Settings ► Security ► Biometrics

- **1** Enter your security code (page 1-22)→Save Users
- 2 Select a user→ →Select an available entry →Frame subject →

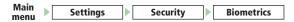
Note

- When framing the image, make sure that the eyes, mouth, nose, eyebrows, and other distinguishing features are clearly visible. Proper registration may not be possible if your hair is hanging over your eyes, or if you are wearing a hat. Proper registration also may not be possible if you shoot the image in an area that is too dark or bright.
- Make sure the entire face is visible within the window. The image may not be saved if the entire face is not framed within the window.
- For verification accuracy, save at least three images per user.
- Take each image under different lighting conditions.
- If you plan to wear glasses for authentication, take images with your glasses on. If you wear your glasses occasionally, save images with and without your glasses.

Tip

 Press (Menu) while the user name is selected to perform the following: *Rename/Reset*

Setting Biometrics



- **1** Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **2** Select $ONIOFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Biometric Authentication

Once Biometrics is set to ON, use the feature to: Open handset when Password Lock (page 12-3) is set; activate Display from power saving mode; or turn handset power on.

- Feature unavailable unless User image (page 12-5) is saved.
 - While password lock is active, press □→
 Frame your face in Display

Authentication is performed and Password Lock is released.

Entering Security Code to Cancel Password Lock

While password lock is active, enter your security code (page 1-22)

 To unlock Password Lock while authentication window is displayed, press (Password) and enter Security Code.

Note

- Biometrics function is not 100% accurate in authenticating user identity.
 SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any loss or damage suffered in using this feature.
- During biometric authentication, make sure that the eyes, mouth, nose, eyebrows, and other distinguishing features are clearly visible. Proper authentication may not be possible if your hair covers your eyes or if you are wearing a hat. Proper authentication also may not be possible if you shoot the image in an area that is dark or too bright.
- Make sure that the face being authenticated fits fully within the window. Authentication may not be possible if part of the face is outside of the window.

Tip

 When Biometrics is set to ON, authentication can be performed when you open handset.

Setting Secret Mode

Set whether to show Phone Book entries saved as secret (page 4-4). "[[...]" indicator appears when Secret Mode is set to **Show**.

Main Main Settings ► Security ► Secret Mode

- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select Show|Hide→

Note

• Secret Mode is set to *Hide* if handset power is turned off.

Tip

- If you receive a call or message from a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting set to ON when Secret Mode is set to Hide, only the caller's phone number or sender's email address is displayed.
- If a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting set to ON is saved to Hot Status Members List, the person's current status (Hot Status information) is not displayed when Secret Mode is set to Hide.

IP Service Setting

Set whether to use Hot Status and Circle Talk.

Main
■ Settings
■ Security
■ IP Service

1 Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Note

 Before setting the IP service, you need to retrieve the network connection information (page 1-17).

Keypad Lock

Keypad Lock allows you to disable the keys to prevent unintentional operations while your handset is in your bag or pocket. "\" indicator appears when Keypad Lock is set.

Setting Keypad Lock

1 In Standby, press and hold

Canceling Keypad Lock

Press and hold
while the Keypad Lock is set

lote

- Keypad Lock cannot be set when infrared communication is activated.
- When Keypad Lock is set, Information Prompt (page 1-10) does not appear.

Reset Settings

Settings and data that will be reset are as follows:

Item	Description
Reset All	Return all settings to their defaults and erase all data stored on handset.
Reset Setting	Reset all the settings to the default.
Clear Memory	Delete all the Phone Book entries, data in Data Folder, and messages.
Confirmation	If you select <i>Notify Only Once</i> , and you want to display a confirmation window again, reset the notification setting to the default so that a confirmation window appears again.

N/1-:			-			
Main		Settings		Security		Reset
menu	Ĺ		٦.		1.	

- **1** Select an item→
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22) \rightarrow *YES* \rightarrow

The selected data and settings are reset (initialized), and the handset restarts automatically.

Note

- Files or information saved in USIM Card and memory card are not restored after resetting handset.
- Reset All and Clear Memory cannot be performed when there is data created by a Lifestyle-Appli on the IC card. Delete the data created with the Lifestyle-Appli and then perform reset operations again.
- Performing Reset All or Clear Memory will delete some S! Appli and/or other content that was preinstalled at the time of purchase. Such deleted content cannot be restored.
- If you perform Clear Memory, settings for Keitaideco (page 13-7) will revert to their defaults.

Tip

- The security code is initialized after reset all.
- A confirmation window will appear if the IC card is locked (page 20-5).
 You cannot perform Reset All or Clear Memory without first turning off the IC Card Lock.

Restricted Mode

Restricting Internet Connection

Set the handset so it cannot be connected to the Internet by inputting a URL (page 16-5).



1 Enter your Internet security code (page 1-22)

→.

When Your Internet Security Code is not Registered

Press \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter your new Internet security code \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Re-enter your new Internet security code for confirmation \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow $Do \ not \ Save$

- ●To register a clue to your Internet security code, select *Save* and enter a clue
- **2** Select Set Regulation $\rightarrow \bigcirc ON \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Changing Internet Security Code



1 Enter your Internet security code (page 1-22)



- **2** Select *Change Password*→ **•** (twice)
- **3** Enter your new Internet security code→●
- 4 Re-enter your new Internet security code for confirmation→

 ■
- **5** Select Save|Do not Save→

Registering a Clue to Your Internet Security Code Select Save
ightharpoonup
i

Active Window	13-2	Adding a New Event	13-25	Location Navi
About Active Window	13-2	Editing the Events	13-27	Backup
Opening Active Window	13-2	Deleting Events	13-27	Transferring Files to a Memory C
Members List	13-3	Alarm Date & Time	13-28	Restoring
Live Monitor	13-4	Jumping to the Specified Date	13-28	Restoring Data on the SoftBanl
Weather Information	13-4	Setting the Calendar Lock	13-28	Handset (except 3G)
Setting Active Window	13-5	Changing the Colors of Dates		Deleting Backup Data
Keitaideco 815T	13-7	and Days of the Week	13-28	Backing up Function Sett
Using Downloaded Keitaideco	13-7	Using Reminder	13-29	Transferring to Memory Card
Simple Mode	13-8	Setting First View	13-29	Restoring Settings
Switching to Simple Mode	13-8	Setting the Text Color	13-29	Using International Call Ser
Displaying the Simple Menu	13-8	Tasks	13-30	Changing the International Cod
Displaying the Full Menu		Adding Task Items	13-30	Adding an Entry to the Country
in Simple Mode	13-9	Opening Tasks	13-32	Code List
Turning Off Simple Mode	13-9	Deleting Tasks	13-33	Shortcut Menu
Simple Mode Functions	13-10	Setting the Tasks Lock	13-33	Setting the Shortcut Menu
Alarms	13-16	Time Table	13-33	Accessing a Function from the
	13-16	Registering a Time Table	13-33	Shortcut Menu
Deleting Alarms	13-17	Checking the Time Table		Editing the Function Names
Alarm Time	13-18	Copying Time Tables	13-34	Changing the Shortcut Icons
Answering Machine	13-18	Deleting Time Tables	13-34	Moving Icons
Setting the Answering Machine	13-18	Setting Time Table	13-34	Deleting Shortcut Icons
Setting the Ringing Duration	13-19	Kitchen Timer	13-35	Sending Touch Tones
Playing/Deleting Messages	13-19	Voice Recorder	13-35	Sending Individual Touch Tones
Notepad	13-19	Recording Sound	13-35	Sending Touch Tones Sequentia
Setting the Category Icon According	g	Playing Recordings	13-36	Using Pause (P) in Touch Tone
to the Contents of the Notepad		Number Memo	13-36	Sequences
Calculator	13-20	Viewing a Number Memo	13-36	Using the Stereo Earphor
Converter	13-20	World Clock	13-37	(optional)
Dictionary	13-20	World Clock Setting	13-37	Setting the Phone Number
Calendar		Displaying World Clock	13-38	One-touch Calls
Opening Calendar	13-21	My Locations	13-38	One-touch Answering
Using Information Registered		Saving Location Information		Setting Auto Answer
in the Event	13-21	to My Locations	13-38	

ocation Navi	13-39
Backup	13-39
Transferring Files to a Memory Card	13-39
Restoring	13-40
Restoring Data on the SoftBank	
Handset (except 3G)	13-41
Deleting Backup Data	13-41
Backing up Function Setting	s13-42
Transferring to Memory Card	13-42
Restoring Settings	13-42
Jsing International Call Service	e13-43
Changing the International Code	13-43
Adding an Entry to the Country	
Code List	13-43
Shortcut Menu	
Setting the Shortcut Menu	13-44
Accessing a Function from the	
Shortcut Menu	13-44
Editing the Function Names	13-44
Changing the Shortcut Icons	13-44
Moving Icons	13-45
Deleting Shortcut Icons	13-45
Sending Touch Tones	
Sending Individual Touch Tones	13-45
Sending Touch Tones Sequentially	13-45
Using Pause (P) in Touch Tone	
Sequences	13-46
Jsing the Stereo Earphone	
optional)	
Setting the Phone Number	13-47
One-touch Calls	13-47
One-touch Answering	13-47
C. II. A. I. A.	40 47

Active Window

About Active Window

Save people to the Members List, and make calls, send messages and initiate Circle Talk calls to them from Active Window. Check the latest information of Live Monitor and weather forecast in Active Window

Active Window can be easily switched between Shortcut mode and Communication mode.







Communication Mode

①Members List

Your current status (My Status) (page 18-7) is displayed on the top. Set an icon or a photo for each member. Save members from Hot Status Members List to view their status. Make calls, send messages or initiate Circle Talk in Communication mode (page 13-4).

- 2 Live Monitor (Shortcut mode only) Displays newly received information and images.
- **3Weather Indicator (Shortcut mode only)**

Opening Active Window

In Standby, press ((twice)

● Press 🖾 (Switch) to toggle between Shortcut and Communication modes.

Tip

- Active Window opens in the previously displayed mode.
- Press [27] (Menu) while Active Window is displayed to perform the following (some items are not displayed depending on the mode and the position of the cursor):

Settings/View/Change Member/Change Icon/Edit List/Main Menu/Mail/Yahoo! Keitai

Members List

Add members to Members List from Hot Status Members List or Phone Book to view their status in Active Window. A maximum of five people can be saved to the Members List.

It is possible to change and delete members, change the icons, and display your own Hot Status information (My Status) (page 18-7).

Saving People to the Members List

1 In Active Window, select an empty item→ (Save)
To Change a Member

Select the member you want to change $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Menu) \rightarrow Change $Member \rightarrow \boxdot$ \rightarrow YES $\rightarrow \boxdot$

Tip

• To add a member from the Hot Status Members List, you need to save the person to the Hot Status Members List first (page 18-4).

Editing the Members List

1 In Active Window, press \mathbf{y} (Menu) $\rightarrow Edit List \rightarrow \mathbf{O}$

2 Select a member $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

To Save a New Member Select *Not Registered*→

3 Select *Hot Status|Phone Book*→ → Select a member → ■

aiT

Delete/Delete All

Changing Icons

- In Active Window, select a member→ (Menu)→

 Change Icon→

 Change Icon→

Setting My Status Display

Set whether or not to display your Hot Status information (My Status) (page 18-7).

- 1 In Active Window, press \mathbf{v} (Menu) $\rightarrow Edit \ List \rightarrow \mathbf{e}$
- **2** Select *My Status*→ **•** (ON/OFF)

Displaying Hot Status Information

Display members' or your own Hot Status information.

1 In Standby, press ((twice)

In Shortcut Mode

Use ● to select a member → ■

In Communication Mode

Use \bigcirc to select a member \rightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow $View \rightarrow$

Tip

- If My Status is selected in Communication mode, press to display the My Status window (page 18-7).
- Hot Status information cannot be displayed if saving of Hot Status is not permitted for that person or if you have been deleted from other party's list.

Contacting Members

In Communication mode, contact members by directly calling, sending a message or making a Circle Talk call.

- 1 In Active Window, use 🐧 to select a member
- **2** Use ••• to select the contact method→••
 - To make a call
 - To create and send a message
 - To make a Circle Talk call

Live Monitor

Check the details of newly received information displayed in the Live Monitor in Shortcut mode.

When new information is received, " " is displayed in Standby.

- The content registered in Live Monitor under Yahoo! Keitai (page 16-16) is displayed in the Live Monitor in Shortcut mode.
- 1 In Active Window, use 🗘 to select the Live Monitor→
 - Press ত্ৰি (Update) to update to the latest information. Press ☑ (Access) to display the selected site.

Note

 If the reception of new information fails, Information Prompt (page 1-10) appears. While the Live Monitor list (page 16-16) is displayed, press (Menu) and then select *Update* to receive the information again.

Tip

- You can set the information to be automatically updated to the latest (page 13-5).

Weather Information

Check weather forecast in Shortcut mode.

1 In Active Window, use **‡** to select the Weather Indicator→ **■**

Setting Active Window

Set Active Window display in Shortcut mode.

Setting Active Window Template

Set whether to display both Hot Status information and news, or just Hot Status information or news in Active Window

- **1** In Active Window, press ☑ (Menu)→Settings→ → Templates → ■
- **2** Select Status/NewslHot StatuslNews→
 ■

Setting Automatic Update

Set to automatically update the information displayed in the Live Monitor in Active Window.

The time interval for the automatic updates can be set from *Flash News* (1/2/4/8 hours), *News* (24 hours), and *S! Loop* (4 hours).

- In Active Window, press ☑ (Menu)→Settings→ ■

 →Display→ ■
- 2 Select Auto Update→ → Flash News/News/ S! Loop→ ●

To Set Flash News to Update Automatically

Select the time interval for the automatic update \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc

• If you select *Manual*, Flash News is not updated automatically.

To Set News/S! Loop to Update Automatically

Select $Automatic \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

• If you select *Manual*, News/S! Loop are not updated automatically.

Note

- Live Monitor flash news and S! Loop list updates do not take place during late hours at night.
- Automatic update may not occur if your handset is outside the service area or signal reception is poor.
- If automatic updates stop for some reason, performing a manual update (page 13-4) can restart the automatic updates.

Tip

You can also set the automatic update by the following operation.
 Main menu → Yahoo! Keitai → Live Monitor → Settings → Auto Update

Displaying/Hiding Live Monitor Info in Standby

- In Active Window, press $\[oxdots \]$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Settings \rightarrow lacktriangle$ $\rightarrow Display \rightarrow lacktriangle$
- **3** Select *Show* or $Hide \rightarrow \blacksquare$

13

Tip

You can also set the display of Live Monitor by the following operation.
 Main menu → Yahoo! Keitai → Live Monitor → Settings → Idle Screen → Idle Display

Setting the Image Display

Set whether or not the Live Monitor in Active Window displays images of newly received information.

- **1** In Active Window, press ☑ (Menu)→Settings→ ■

 →Display→ ■
- **2** Select Idle Screen→ →Image Setting → ●
- **3** Select Show or $Hide \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Tip

You can also set the image display by the following operation.
 Main menu → Yahoo! Keitai → Live Monitor → Settings → Idle Screen → Image Setting

Setting the New Information Displayed in Active Window

Set whether to display all the newly arrived information or just the unread information in Active Window.

- **1** In Active Window, press ☑ (Menu)→Settings→ → Display→ ■
- **2** Select *Unread/Read*→
- **3** Select *Unread Only* or *Show All*→

Tip

 If you select *Unread Only*, the ticker is not displayed until the next new information arrives when there is no unread information.

Setting the Ticker Speed

Set the scroll speed and the shifting rate of the newly arrived information displayed in tickers in the Live Monitor in Active Window.

- **1** In Active Window, press ☑ (Menu)→Settings→ → Display→ ■
- **2** Select $Screen Speed \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a speed \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Keitaideco 815T

Download Keitaideco to coordinate handset themes with Coordinate Panels. A QR Code is included with each set of Coordinate Panels. Scan the QR Code to download and set Keitaideco themes (ie: matching wallpapers, ringtones, incoming/email images, Gamendeco and Main menu designs).

- 1 In standby, press and hold 🗹
- **2** Center QR Code on Display and press
- **3** Select *YES* and press •
- Keitaideco themes are automatically set when download is complete.

Note

- This QR Code scanner is exclusively for scanning Keitaideco QR Codes.
- Themes are not set when battery is low. After charging battery, follow instructions for Using Downloaded Keitaideco (right).

Tip

- Available items vary by Keitaideco theme.
- All transmissions are unavailable while setting is in progress.
- Keitaideco files set together at once for a group of functions can be also be individually changed for each function (Page 9-11).

Using Downloaded Keitaideco

Set a previously downloaded Keitaideco theme.

Main Data Folder

- **1** Select Phone Memory|Memory Card→

 Keitaideco→

 Keit
- **2** Select a file and press \longrightarrow YES \rightarrow

Note

 Some items are not set when battery is low. Charge battery prior to setting themes.

Tip

- Available items vary by Keitaideco theme.
- All transmissions are unavailable while setting is in progress.

Simple Mode

The Simple mode enables easy and simplified operations of the various full mode functions. Select the font size and menu pattern for the main menu (Simple menu) for often used functions when you switch to the Simple mode.

- The full menu can be displayed without exiting the Simple mode if you want to use functions that are not available in Simple mode.
- If you have switched from full mode to Simple mode, the Sub Menu View setting (page 11-13) is changed to Hide. It is also changed to 1-line Digit when Mini Clock is selected in Others (page 11-7) in the main display. These settings are retained if you return to full mode.

Switching to Simple Mode

Select the font size and menu pattern when you switch to the Simple mode.

1 In Standby, press and hold 🗟

The mode changes to the Simple mode.

2 Select $YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select a font size $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select a menu pattern $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow$

Tip

You can also switch to the Simple mode by the following operation.
 Main menu → Settings → SimpleMode ON

Displaying the Simple Menu

There are three patterns for the Simple menu. Select a pattern when you start up the Simple mode, though you can change it later. You can also switch between the List display and Icon display.

The menu patterns are listed below.

Menu 1 Menu 2 Menu 2 Menu 2 Menu 2 Menu 3 Menu 3 Menu 3 Menu 3 Menu 4 Menu 6 Message Box Create Message Mode Message Box Message Mode Message Box Message Mode Message Box Message Mode Message Box Message Mode Messaging My Number Full Menu Messaging Phone Book Messaging Yahool Keitai Camera My Number Data Folder Data Folder Data Folder Messaging Phone Book Messaging Yahool Keitai Camera My Number Data Folder Data Folder Tools Settings My Full Menu Messaging Phone Book Messaging Phone Book Messaging Yahool Keitai Camera My Number Data Folder Tools Settings My Full Menu Messaging Phone Book Messaging	Display Method Menu Pattern	List Display	Icon Display	
Menu 1 My Number Add to Phone Book Tools Settings Full Menu Phone Book Messaging Camera Data Folder My Number Alarms Tools Settings Full Menu Alarms Tools Settings Full Menu Phone Book Messaging Camera Data Folder My Number Alarms Tools Settings Full Menu Phone Book Messaging Tools Settings Full Menu Phone Book Messaging Yahool Keitai Camera My Number Data Folder Tools Messaging Phone Book Messaging Yahool Keitai Folder Tools Messaging My Number Data Folder Tools Settings My Settings My Settings Phone Book Messaging Phone Book Messaging Yahool Keitai Folder Tools		Message Box Create Message	Box Message Mode	
Settings Full Menu	Menu 1	Add to Phone Book	Phone Book Search Tools	
Menu 2 Messaging Camera Data Folder My Number Alarms Tools Settings Full Menu Phone Book Messaging Yahoo! Keitai Camera My Number Data Folder Messaging Yahoo! Keitai Camera My Number Data Folder Tools Messaging Yahoo! Settings My Number Data Folder Tools Messaging Yahoo! Settings Messaging Yahoo! Settings Messaging Messaging Nessaging Messaging Nessaging Nessa		Settings		
Menu 2 Data Folder My Number Alarms Tools Settings Full Menu Phone Book Messaging Full Menu Phone Book Messaging Yahool Keitai Camera My Number Data Folder Tools Settings My Number Messaging Phone Full Menu Tools Settings My Number Messaging Phone Folder Folder Tools Settings My Full Menu Messaging Phone Book Folder Tools		Messaging	Δlarms Camera	
Settings Full Menu Phone Book Messaging Yahoo! Keitai Camera My Number Data Folder Tools Settings My Number Full Menu Yahoo! Keitai Camera Messaging Phone Book Tools Settings My Number Full Menu	Menu 2	Data Folder My Number	Messaging Tools	
Menu 3 Menu 4 Messaging Yahool Keitai Keitai Camera Folder My Number Data Folder Tools Messaging Phone Book Tools Settings My Full Meau		Settings		
Menu 3 Menu 4 Messaging Yahoo! Keitai Keit				
Menu 3 My Number Messaging Phone Book Tools Tools My Settings My Full Magu		Messaging	Camera	
Tools Sattings My Full Many	Menu 3	My Number		
Settings Number I dil Wenu		Tools Settings	Settings My Number Full Menu	

- 1 In Simple mode, press
 - The List display and Icon display switch every time you press (Switch).

qiT

 Press (Menu) while the Simple menu is displayed to perform the following.

Menu Patterns/Guidance

Displaying the Full Menu in Simple Mode

- In Simple mode, press $\bigcirc \rightarrow Full Menu \rightarrow \bigcirc$
 - Press [777/set] in the full menu to return to the Simple menu.

Turning Off Simple Mode

- In Standby, press and hold 🖀
- **2** Select $YES \rightarrow \bullet$

The Simple mode is turned off.

Tip

You can also turn off the Simple mode by the following operation.
 Main menu → Settings → SimpleMode OFF

Simple Mode Functions

The functions that can be used in Simple mode are listed below.

- If you want to use functions that are not available in Simple mode, display the full menu (page 13-9).
- The Simple mode settings are reflected in the full menu.

13 Simple Menu

	Menu Item	Description	Page
Settings		Refer to the list of "Settings".	13-13
My Number		Same function as in full mode	2-11
	Alarms	Up to six alarms can be set.	13-16
	Answer Phone		13-18
	Notepad	Same function as in full mode	13-19
	Calculator	Same function as in full mode	13-20
	Dictionary		13-20
Tools	Calendar	Monthly view only Saving, editing and deleting events/tasks cannot be done.	13-21, 13-30
	Scan Data		6-14
	Kitchen Timer	Same function as in full mode	13-35
	Ku-man's Room		19-5
	Full Menu	Displays all items of Tools menu in full mode.	_
Full Menu		Displays the full menu without turning off the Simple mode.	13-9

	Menu Item	Description	Page
	Phone Book		4-2
	Video Call		5-2
Phone Book	Add New	Same function as in full mode	4-3
	Call Log		2-8
	Group		4-7
	Full Menu	Displays all items of Phone Book menu in full mode.	-
Phone Book Searc	h		4-9
Add to Phone Boo	k		4-2
	Message Box		15-12
	Create Msg.	Same function as in full mode	15-5, 15-10
	Retrieve Msg.		15-3
Messaging	Drafts		15-11
	Templates		15-8
	Unsent Msg.		15-12
	Full Menu	Displays all items of Messaging menu in full mode.	_
	Received/Sent		15-12
Message Box	Drafts		15-11
	Unsent Msg.	Same function as in full mode	15-12
Create Message	Create Msg.		15-5, 15-10
	Templates		15-8
Manner Mode		Turns manner mode on or off.	2-11

	Menu Item	Description	Page
Alarms		Up to six alarms can be set.	13-16
Camera	Mobile		6-6
	Digital	Same function as in full mode	6-6
	Video		6-11
	Full Menu	Displays all items of Camera menu in full mode.	_
Data Folder			9-2
	Yahoo! Keitai	Same function as in full mode	16-2
	Bookmarks		16-6
Yahoo! Keitai	Saved Pages		16-5
	Enter URL		16-8
	Manufacture #		16-14
	Full Menu	Displays all items of Yahoo! Keitai menu in full mode.	-

indicates the display is different depending on the selected menu pattern.

Functions Available with the Simple Menu "Settings"

Menu Item		Description	Page
	Wallpaper	Same function as in full mode	11-6
Idle Screen Font Size	Clock/Calendar	Mini Clock cannot be set	11-7
	Ku-man	Same function as in full mode	11-9
	General	Only Large/Medium setting possible	11-9
	Messaging		11-9, 15-22
	Mobile Web	Same function as in full mode	11-9, 16-12
	Text Entry		3-16, 11-9
	Incoming	Can only be set for incoming voice calls, video calls or Messages.	11-4
Sounds	Earpiece Vol.	Same function as in full mode	11-5
	Keypad Tone Vol.	Same function as in full mode	11-6
N4	ON/OFF	Turns manner mode on or off.	2-11
Manner Mode	Switch Mode	Switches manner mode (original manner mode cannot be edited).	11-2
Diverting	Voicemail ON		14-5
	Deactivate All	Same function as in full mode	14-4
	Listen VM		14-6

	Menu Item	Description	Page
	Password Lock		12-3
Reject Calls			11-14
Security	Anti Spam		15-24
Change Password		Same function as in full mode	12-2
	Date & Time		1-18
Clock	12 hour/24 hour		11-9
	World Clock		13-37
Save 1-touch		A phone number is saved to Phone Book and assigned to either soft key to make calls.	-
Full Menu		Displays all items of Settings menu in full mode.	_
Simple Mode (OFF	Turns off the Simple mode.	13-9

Functions Available from Standby

Operation	Function	Description	Page
	Simple Menu	Refer to "Simple Menu".	13-8
Press and hold	Keypad Lock/Unlock	Same function as in full mode	12-7
■ 0,5	My Details	Displays the same items as in "My Number" in Simple mode.	-
Ō	Active Window		13-2
Press and hold 💍	Calendar		13-21
	Phone Book Search		4-9
•••	Dialed Numbers	Same function as in full mode	2-8
Press and hold •	Sent Message Log		15-6, 15-10
	Received Calls		2-9
Press and hold 🕒	Received Message Log		15-6, 15-10
 Y7 X 7	One-touch Calling	Makes a call to a phone number assigned to either soft key and saved to Phone Book.	_
Press and hold	Simple Mode Off	Turns off the Simple mode.	13-9
P	Shortcut Menu	Assigning an item to the Shortcut menu is not possible.	13-44
Press and hold 🕞	Information Prompt		1-10
297/×t	Answer Phone/Recorded Message Playback		2-6
Press and hold Press	Answer Phone On/Off	Same function as in full mode	2-5
Press and hold ##	Manner Mode On/Off	Same rancion as in rail mode	2-11
Press and hold @*	Accessing functions set with the Side Key setting		11-13

^{*} Use this procedure when the handset is closed.

Alarms

An alarm name, alarm time, ring setting, repeat setting, snooze setting can be set to alarm setting. The "" indicator appears in Standby when Alarm is set. At the set time, the alarm tone, vibration and image display are activated. The External Light also flashes.

Setting Alarms

Main Tools Alarms

1 Select an alarm→

Setting an Alarm Name

Select an alarm name → ■ → Enter an alarm name → ■

Setting an Alarm Time

Select $\overline{Time} \rightarrow \blacksquare$ \rightarrow Enter an alarm time in accordance with the 24-hour system $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

2 Press \bigcirc (OK) \rightarrow OK \rightarrow

Alarm is set.

- If you select Notify Only Once when a confirmation window telling that the alarm will not start if the power is off appears, this window will not be displayed from the next time.
- Press (ON/OFF) to turn off the alarm you have set.

Note

• Alarms do not sound when the handset power is OFF.

Tip

- When the time set for an alarm is reached, alarm will play even if you
 are operating the handset. However, if the time set for an alarm is
 reached during a call, while taking a picture or recording a video or
 during data communication, the alarm plays after the call, taking of a
 picture or recording of a video, or communication ends.
- When you change the Main City (page 13-38) for the World Clock, the alarms are updated to match the time of the newly set city. And if DST (Daylight Saving Time) is turned *ON* or *Date&Time* setting (page 1-18) is changed, then the alarms are also updated.

Setting the Alarm Tone/Alarm Volume/Vibration/Ringing Duration/Image

Main menu Tools Alarms

- **1** Select an alarm→
- **2** Select *Alarm Tone*→

Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as an Alarm Tone

Select $Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Patterns/Melodies \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$ an alarm tone $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as an Alarm Tone

Select $Tone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Phone \ Memory/Memory \ Card \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select a file $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ (twice)

Setting the Time Reader as an Alarm Select $Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Time \ Reading \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the Alarm Volume

Select *Volume* → ■ → Adjust the alarm volume → ■

Setting the Alarm Vibration

Select *Vibration* → Select a vibration pattern → ■

 If you select Link to Sound for the vibration pattern, the handset vibrates with the melody (only melody files that vibrate the handset with the SMAF format) which is set as an alarm.

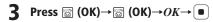
Setting an Alarm Duration

Select $Duration \rightarrow \blacksquare$ \rightarrow Enter an alarm duration $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Displaying the Original Image at the Setting Time Select *Image* → □ → *Original* → □

Displaying an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card at the Setting Time

Select $Image \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Phone \ Memory/Memory \ Card \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select an image $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Use \ \square \rightarrow Use \ \blacksquare \rightarrow Use \ \blacksquare \rightarrow Use \ \square \rightarrow Use \$



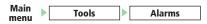
Note

If the alarm sounds while the handset is open, it sounds at the Level 3 volume (which is the maximum volume for Ascending Volume or Descending Volume) even when the alarm volume is set to Level 4, Level 5, Ascending Volume or Descending Volume.

aiT

 The handset does not vibrate when the alarm vibration setting for the Original Mode (page 11-3) is set to OFF.

Setting the Repeat/Snooze



Select an alarm→

Setting the Alarm to Repeat at a Specified Interval

Select $Once \rightarrow \bigcirc$ Select an item $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

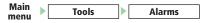
When you select *Weekly*, specify which days to start the alarm.
 Press to check/remove mark (OK)

Setting the Snooze

Select $\bar{S}nooze \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Enter an interval between alarm tones $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

 If the snooze is set to ON, the alarm plays in specified intervals up to five additional times.

Deleting Alarms



Deleting One Alarm

Select an alarm $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Deleting All Alarms

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow Reset $AII \rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22) \rightarrow YES $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

Alarm Time

The alarm stops automatically after a set duration, but you can also stop it manually.

1 Press any button while the alarm is going

Returning to Standby
Stop alarm→
Power

Stopping Snooze and Returning to Standby

Stop alarm $\rightarrow Stop Snooze \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Answering Machine

This feature can record a caller's message when you are unable to answer a voice call. The """ indicator appears in Standby when the Answering Machine is set to *ON*. Your handset can store up to five messages and each message can be up to 30 seconds long.

Setting the Answering Machine

Main menu Tools Answer Phone

1 Select *Setting*→

2 Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

You can also set the Answering Machine if you press and hold min Standby.

Note

- Messages may not be recorded when an S! Appli is set as the Screensaver (page 17-6).
- Answering Machine is not available for video calls and Call Waiting (page 14-6).
- While Original Mode is set, the Answering Machine setting (page 11-3) for Original Mode takes priority. If you set or cancel the Answering Machine while the handset is in Original mode, you should change the Answering Machine setting for Original mode.
- If your handset receives a call when the Answer Phone is OFF, and you recorded a message by pressing and holding _____, the Answer Phone turns to ON after the call automatically.

Tip

- When the Auto Answer (page 13-47) is ON, the Answering Machine is given priority.
- If you press while the handset is playing an answering message or a caller is recording a message, you can talk with the caller.

Setting the Ringing Duration

Specify the length of the time that the handset receives a call to the time the answer message activates.

Main menu Tools Answer Phone

1 Select Set Duration→ ■

2 Enter the ringing duration→

Playing/Deleting Messages

Main menu Tools Answer Phone

Playing a Message

Select *Recordings* → Select a message → ■

Unheard recorded messages have " " displayed. Messages you have heard have " " displayed.

Deleting a Message

Select $Recordings \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select \ a \ message \rightarrow \boxdot \ (Menu) \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Notepad

Main Tools Notepad

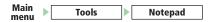
Select the notepad to which the content is not stored → ■ → Enter the contents of the memo → ■

Tip

- To edit the stored content, press 🖾 (Edit) after selecting the notepad.
- If the contents are already stored, select the notepad and press
 (Menu) to perform the following:

Delete/Set Category/Export/As Mail

Setting the Category Icon According to the Contents of the Notepad



- **1** Select a notepad $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ (Menu) \rightarrow Set Category $\rightarrow \bullet$
- **2** Select a category→

The icon of the selected category is displayed.

Calculator

		_	
Main	Tools	l⊾.	Calaulatau
menu	IOOIS		Calculator

Key	Function	Key	Function
0.0 ~ 9.0 o	Enter Numbers	•	=
Ō	+		Switch +/-
P	_	927h	Tax
•••	×	297/xe	C (Clear)
	÷	#2 ²⁷	Decimal
power	Exit		

Tip

- To calculate tax, enter amount and press . Tax appears in red.
 Press again to view tax added amount in green.
- Press 🔀 (Menu) for other calculator options:

Converter: Enter the currency exchange rate and then perform

currency conversion calculations.

Clear All : Delete the input value and data stored in memory.

MS : Save the input value to memory.

M+ : Add the input value to the value stored in memory.

MR : Display the value stored in memory.

% : Calculate a percentage.

1/X : Calculate a reciprocal.

SQRT : Calculate a square root.

Set Tax Rate : Set the tax rate when you press . Enter the tax rate

and press .

Converter

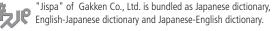
Main Tools Calculator

- **1** Press ☑ (Menu)→Converter→ →Exchange Rate → →Main Currency/Sub Currency → ■
- 2 Enter the exchange rate→ → → (three times)
- **3** Enter an amount→¬¬ (Menu)→Converter→¬¬ → To Main/To Sub→¬¬

Dictionary

The dictionary data (辞スパ(Jispa)) on the handset include a Japanese dictionary (approximately 40,000 entries), English-Japanese dictionary (approximately 40,000 entries), and a Japanese-English dictionary (approximately 36,000 entries) on the supplied CD-ROM.

 To use the dictionary function, install the dictionary data from the supplied CD-ROM to a memory card. For details, refer to the instructions on the CD-ROM.





Entering a Japanese word (kanji or reading) to look up its meaning in Japanese

Select *Japanese* → ■ → Enter a keyword → ■ → Select a word → ■

Entering a Japanese word (kanji or reading) to look up its meaning in English

Select *Japanese-English* → □ → ᠍→Enter a keyword → □ → Select a word → □

Tip

- You can switch dictionaries by pressing (Switch) while a word is selected. You can see the meaning of a word by selecting the word and pressing .
- After selecting a word and pressing , press (Menu) to perform the following:

Copy Meanings/Copy Header

Calendar

Up to 400 events (up to 100 events a day) can be saved to Calendar. If Calendar is set to appear in Standby (Idle Screen, page 11-7), indicators appear on the days of a scheduled event.

Opening Calendar

Set to open Calendar in Monthly View, Monthly&Event View, Weekly View, 4-Month View or All View.

Main Tools Calendar

- 1 Press

 → Select a calendar view format
 - You can switch the calendar view between Monthly View, Monthly&Event View, Weekly View, 4-Month View and All View.

Tin

• Alternatively, press and hold [in Standby to view Calendar.

Using Information Registered in the Event

Make a call, send a message, or connect to a website by using a phone number, email address, or URL registered in the Event. You can refer to messages, websites, and images.

Main

Tools

Calendar

- Select a day→

 →Select an event→
- **2** Select an item→

Making a Call to the Stored Phone Number

Sending a Message to the Stored Phone Number

Press $\blacksquare \rightarrow Create Mail \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Create a message$

 See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 15-5) or "Creating & Sending an SMS Message" (page 15-10) about the following operations.

Sending a Message to the Stored Email Address

Press ■→Create a message

 See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 15-5) about the following operations.

Connecting to the Stored URL

Press \longrightarrow $YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Referring to the Message Which has been Linked Select *To Messages*→ ■

Referring to the Web Page Which has been Linked Select *To Saved Pages*

Referring to the Picture Which has been Linked Select *To Pictures*→

■

Using Registered Phone Numbers and Email Addresses in Contents

Main menu Tools Calendar

- Select a day→ → Select an event → ■
- **2** Select an item in *Contents*→

Making a Call to the Selected Phone Number

Sending a Message to the Selected Phone Number

Press $\blacksquare \rightarrow Create \ Mail \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Create \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Create \ a \ message$

 See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 15-5) or "Creating & Sending an SMS Message" (page 15-10) about the following operations.

Sending a Message to the Selected Email Address

Press \bigcirc \rightarrow *Create Mail* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow *Create* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Create a message

 See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 15-5) about the following operations.

Adding the Selected Phone Number/Email Address to Phone Book

Press \bigcirc \rightarrow Save Sender \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Add New/Add \rightarrow \bigcirc

 See "Adding a New Entry" (page 4-3) about the following operations.

What can you do on Monthly View/Monthly&Event View/4-Month View Window?



Monthly View Window

In the Monthly View window, the cursor is in orange, and "" " shows that an event is registered. In this window, an icon is displayed on a day that an event is registered.

Go to the previous month by pressing $\fbox{\cite{100}}$. In the 4-Month View window, the previous 4 months are shown.

Go to the next month by pressing ###. In the 4-Month View window, the next 4 months are shown

Press (Menu) to perform the following:

Delete : Delete events by selecting For this Day, Before Today or

All.

Set Holiday: Change display colors of a specified date or a day in the

week.

To Tasks : Open Tasks Window.

Jump : Jump to the specific day.

Settings : Use Reminder (page 13-29), set the Calendar Lock (page

13-28), set the display format of the calendar (page 13-29),

and set text colors (page 13-29).

What can you do on Weekly View Window?

In the Weekly View window, the cursor is in orange. A starting time and an event title are displayed on the date that an event is registered.

Go to the previous week by pressing *:

Go to the next week by pressing #

Press (Menu) to perform the following:

Delete : Delete events by selecting **For this Day, Before Today** or **All**. **Set Holiday** : Change display colors of a specified date or a day in the week.

To Tasks : Open Tasks Window.

Jump : Jump to the specific day.

Jump to the specific day.

Settings : Use Reminder (page 13-29), set the Calendar Lock (page 13-28), set the display format of the calendar (page 13-29),

and set text colors (page 13-29).

What can you do on Daily View Window?

Go to yesterday by pressing **:
Go to tomorrow by pressing ###.

If *Not Completed* is displayed, unfinished tasks can be displayed by pressing .

Press 🗹 (Menu) to perform the following:

Edit :Edit the selected event.

Delete : Delete events by selecting One or For this Day.

Export : Export the selected event to **Phone Memory/Memory Card**.

Send : Send the selected event as an **As Mail/Via Infrared**.

Jump : Jump to the specific day.

What can you do on All View Window?

Press (Menu) to perform the following:

*Edit the selected event.

Delete : Delete events by selecting One, Select Multi or All.

Search: Search for events by specifying a stamp icon.

Export :Export the selected event to *Phone Memory/Memory Card*.

Send :Send the selected event as an As Mail/Via Infrared.
Settings :Use Reminder (page 13-29), set the Calendar Lock (page

13-28), set the display format of the calendar (page 13-29),

and set text colors (page 13-29).

Adding a New Event

Main menu Tools Calendar

1 Press (Create)

Entering a Title of the Event

Select $Title \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \text{Entering a title} \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the Start Date and Time for the Event

Select $Start\ Date \longrightarrow \blacksquare \longrightarrow Date \& Time/Date\ Only \longrightarrow \blacksquare \longrightarrow Enter date and time \longrightarrow \blacksquare$

- Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
- Enter only the date, when you selected **Date Only**.

Setting the End Date and Time for the Event

Select $End \ Date \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Enter date and time $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

- Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
- Press 🖾 (OK)

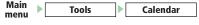
Tip

- You can store events from 2000/01/02 to 2015/12/30. The events on and after 2015/12/30 that you saved using another SoftBank handset cannot be used on this handset.
- You cannot store your events without entering *Title* or *Contents*.
- Press
 (Menu) while registering an event to perform the following operations (some items are not displayed depending on the selected item):

Reset/To Call (page 13-26)

Setting the Alarm

You can set the alarm to notify you about an event. At the set time, the alarm tone or time reading, vibration and image display are activated, and the alarm date and time and the event title are displayed on the Display.



2 Select $ON \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting an Alarm Date and Time

Select *Time*→ ■→Enter an alarm date and time→ ■

 \bullet Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

Setting an Alarm Duration

Select *Duration* → ■ →Enter a ringing duration → ■

Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Alarm Tone Select Tone o \longrightarrow Patterns/Melodies o \longrightarrow Select an alarm tone \longrightarrow

Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Select $Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Phone \ Memory/Memory \ Card \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select a file $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (twice)

Setting the Time Reader as an Alarm

Select $Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Time \ Reading \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the Alarm Volume

Select *Volume* → ■ → Adjust the alarm volume → ■

Setting the Alarm Vibration

Select *Vibration* → Select a vibration pattern →

Displaying the Original Image at the Setting Time

Select $Image \rightarrow \bigcirc Original \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Displaying an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card at the Setting Time

Select $Image \longrightarrow \blacksquare \longrightarrow Phone \ Memory/Memory \ Card \longrightarrow \blacksquare \longrightarrow$ Select an image $\longrightarrow \blacksquare \longrightarrow Use \ \textcircled{\tiny } \$ to adjust the position of the image to clip $\longrightarrow \boxdot$ (Cut) \longrightarrow \blacksquare

3 Press $(OK) \rightarrow (OK) \rightarrow OK \rightarrow (OK)$

 If you select Notify Only Once when a confirmation window telling that the alarm will not start if the power is off appears, this window will not be displayed from the next time.

Note

If the alarm sounds while the handset is open, it sounds at the Level 3
volume (which is the maximum volume for Ascending Volume or
Descending Volume) even when the alarm volume is set to Level 4,
Level 5, Ascending Volume or Descending Volume.

Tip

- When the time set for an alarm is reached, alarm will play even if you
 are operating the handset. However, if the time set for an alarm is
 reached during a call, while taking a picture or recording a video or
 during data communication, the alarm plays after the call, taking of a
 picture or recording of a video, or communication ends.
- Alarm does not sound when: Manner mode (page 11-2) is set to Silent; or Calendar alarm volume for Original Mode (page 11-3) is set to Silent.
- The handset does not vibrate when the vibration settings for the calendar (page 11-3) are OFF for Original Mode of manner mode.
- When you change the Main City (page 13-38) for the World Clock, the alarms are updated to match the time of the newly set city. And if DST (Daylight Saving Time) is turned *ON* or *Date&Time* setting (page 1-18) is changed, then the alarms are also updated.

Other Settings

Main menu Tools Calendar

1 Press (Create)

Setting the Alarm to Repeat at a Specified Interval

Select $Options \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Repeat \ for \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Do \ not \ Repeat | Daily|$ $Weekly/Monthly/Yearly/End \ of \ Month \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter \ a \ repeat duration \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the Stamp Icon

Select $Stamp\ Icon \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$ the stamp icon $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Entering Contents

Select $Contents \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter contents \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting a Location

Select $Location \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$ location information $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting a Category of the Event

Select $Options \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Category \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a category \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting a Phone Number/Email Address/URL

Select $Phone\ Number/Address/URL
ightarrow \bigcirc \to \text{Enter a phone number/email address/URL} \to \bigcirc$

- You can make a voice call or video call, create a message, and connect to a website on the details window of events (pages 13-21, 13-22).
- If you select *Phone Number*, you can insert a phone number stored in Phone Book using the procedure below.

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow *To Call* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select Phone Book \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a phone number \rightarrow \bigcirc (twice)

Setting Link to a Message/Website/Image

 You can look up messages/websites/images that you set in the details window of event (page 13-22).

Displaying/Hiding Events

Select $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow Show/Hide \rightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow Show/Hide \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

Not

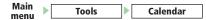
- If you set the start date to the last day of the month, you can set the Repeat for setting to *End of Month*.
- If an event set to repeat daily, weekly, etc. is deleted, a message asks if
 you wish to cancel repeat features. Select *Do not Repeat* to delete the
 event for that day only.
- Canceling a single date of a repeated event may not be effective if the event is sent (page 9-11) and received by another device.

Tip

- To repeat infinitely, enter "00".
- If you set *Monthly* for the 30th or 31st, the repetition is only set for months that include that date.
- If you set *Hide* for event display/hide, your security code needs to be entered to view or edit events. Only " " " is displayed on the calendar window, and no icon is displayed on the calendar in Standby.

Editing the Events

The stored events can be edited.



- Select a date→

 ■
- **2** Select an event $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Edit \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **3** Select an item→ → Edit the item → ■
- **4** Press **(OK)**→Overwrite|Save as New→

Deleting Events

Main menu Tools ► Calendar

Deleting One Event

Select a date \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select an event \rightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow $Delete \rightarrow$ \bigcirc \rightarrow $One \rightarrow$ \bigcirc \rightarrow $YES \rightarrow$ \bigcirc

Deleting All of Today's Events

Select a date \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow $Delete \rightarrow$ \bigcirc \rightarrow $For this Day <math>\rightarrow$ $YES \rightarrow$ \bigcirc

Deleting All Previous Events

Deleting All Events

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow **Delete** \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22) \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc

Deleting Multiple Events

Alarm Date & Time

The alarm stops automatically after a set duration, but you can also stop it manually.

1 Press any button while the alarm is sounding Returning to Standby

Stop alarm→ Power

Checking the Event Details

Stop alarm→

(View)

Jumping to the Specified Date

Enter a date and then display the events for that date. This function cannot be used from the All View window.

Main menu Tools Calendar

1 Press \mathbf{y} (Menu) $\rightarrow Jump \rightarrow \mathbf{\bullet}$

2 Enter a date→

Setting the Calendar Lock

Set the handset so that it asks for the security code (page 1-22) in order to browse the Calendar.

Main

Tools

Calendar

1 Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Calendar Lock \rightarrow \bigcirc

- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **3** Select *Lock|Unlock*→

Note

 If you set Calendar Lock to Lock, an event title is not displayed when the alarm sounds (page 13-29). The Details window cannot be viewed either.

Changing the Colors of Dates and Days of the Week

Change colors of specified dates and days of the week on the Monthly View, Monthly&Event View, Weekly View, and 4-Month View, and on the calendar displayed in Standby if you set Calendar in Idle Screen setting (page 11-7).

Main Tools Calendar

Changing the Color for Displaying a Specified Date

Select a date→ (Menu)→Set Holiday→ → Current Day→ Select a color/Deactivate→ ■

Changing the Color for Displaying a Specified Day of the Week

Press $\[\]$ (Menu) \rightarrow **Set Holiday** $\rightarrow \[\]$ \rightarrow **Select Week** $\rightarrow \[\]$ \rightarrow Select the day of the week $\rightarrow \[\]$ \rightarrow Select a color $\rightarrow \[\]$ \rightarrow $\[\]$ (OK)

Tip

 If you set colors both in Current Day and Select Week, colors set in Current Day are given priority.

Using Reminder

Reminder sets off the alarm at a specified time, and displays events and tasks (page 13-30) of today or the following day.

Main

Tools

Calendar

1 Press \searrow (Menu) \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Reminder \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow

 $ON \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$

Setting Display

Select $Today \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Today/Tomorrow \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Setting Remainder Alarm Time

Select *Time* → ■ → Enter a time → ■

• Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Alarm Tone

Select $Set\ Alarm \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Patterns/Melodies \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select an alarm tone \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Select $Set Alarm \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Phone Memory/Memory$ $Card \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a file \rightarrow \blacksquare \text{ (twice)}$

Setting the Alarm Volume

Select $Set\ Alarm
ightarrow lacktriangledown
ightarrow Volume
ightarrow lacktriangledown Adjust the alarm volume
ightarrow lacktriangledown$

Setting the Alarm Vibration

Select $Set\ Alarm
ightarrow \bigcirc
ightarrow Vibration
ightarrow \bigcirc
ightarrow Select\ a\ vibration$ pattern $ightarrow \bigcirc$

Setting an Alarm Duration

Select $Set\ Alarm o extbf{ o} o Duration o extbf{ o} o$ Enter a ringing duration o

Setting Alarm Repeats

Select $Once \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow \blacksquare$

2 Press (OK)

Note

If the alarm sounds while the handset is open, it sounds at the Level 3
volume (which is the maximum volume for Ascending Volume or
Descending Volume) even when the alarm volume is set to Level 4,
Level 5, Ascending Volume or Descending Volume.

Setting First View

Select from Monthly View, Monthly&Event View, Weekly View, or 4-Month View for the event view window at the time of launch of the calendar.

Main
■ Tools
■ Calendar

2 Select a calendar view format→

Setting the Text Color

Set text colors and border colors on the Daily View/All View window.

1 Press \subseteq (Menu) \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Font Color \rightarrow \bigcirc

2 Select a color→

13

Tasks

Up to 100 tasks can be stored on the task list. View the entire tasks in a list format, or separately by Not Completed and Completed. Also set priorities and categories.

Adding Task Items

Main menu Tools Tasks

1 Press \square (Menu) \rightarrow Create $New \rightarrow \square$

Entering a Title

Select $Title \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter a title \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting a Due Date and Time

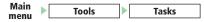
Select *Deadline* → ■ →Enter a due date and time → ■ Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

Press ☑ (OK)

Tir

- You can store tasks from 2000/01/02 to 2015/12/30. The tasks on and after 2015/12/30 that you saved using another SoftBank handset cannot be used on this handset.
- Entry of *Title* or *Contents* field is required to save a task.

Setting the Alarm



1 Press $(Menu) \rightarrow Create \ New \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Alarm \rightarrow \bigcirc$

2 Select $ON \rightarrow \bullet$

Setting an Alarm Time

Select *Time*→ ■ →Enter an alarm time → ■

• Enter an alarm time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

Setting an Alarm Duration

Select $Duration \rightarrow \blacksquare$ \rightarrow Enter a ringing duration $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Alarm Tone

Select $Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Patterns/Melodies \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$ an alarm tone $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Select $Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Phone \ Memory/Memory \ Card \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$ a file $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (twice)

Setting the Time Reader as an Alarm

Select $Tone \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Time \ Reading \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the Alarm Volume

Select *Volume* → ■ → Adjust the alarm volume → ■

Setting the Alarm Vibration

Select *Vibration* → Select a vibration pattern → ■

Displaying the Original Image at the Setting Time

Select $Image \rightarrow \bigcirc Original \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Displaying an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card at the Setting Time

Select $Image \longrightarrow \blacksquare \longrightarrow Phone \ Memory/Memory \ Card \longrightarrow \blacksquare \longrightarrow$ Select an image $\longrightarrow \blacksquare \longrightarrow Use \ \blacksquare \longrightarrow \blacksquare$ to adjust the position of the image to clip $\longrightarrow \blacksquare \bigcirc \square$ (Cut) $\longrightarrow \blacksquare$

3 Press $(OK) \rightarrow (OK) \rightarrow OK \rightarrow (OK)$

 If you select Notify Only Once when a confirmation window telling that the alarm will not start if the power is off appears, this window will not be displayed from the next time.

Note

If the alarm sounds while the handset is open, it sounds at the Level 3
volume (which is the maximum volume for Ascending Volume or
Descending Volume) even when the alarm volume is set to Level 4,
Level 5, Ascending Volume or Descending Volume.

Tip

- For details about how the handset operates during the alarm, see page 13-16.
- Alarm does not sound when: Manner mode (page 11-2) is set to Silent; or Calendar alarm volume for Original Mode (page 11-3) is set to Silent
- The handset does not vibrate when the vibration settings for the calendar (page 11-3) are OFFF for Original Mode of manner mode.
- When you change the Main City (page 13-38) for the World Clock, the alarms are updated to match the time of the newly set city. And if DST (Daylight Saving Time) is turned *ON* or *Date&Time* setting (page 1-18) is changed, then the alarms are also updated.

Other Settings



1 Press \square (Menu) \rightarrow Create New \rightarrow

Setting the Stamp Icon

Select $Stamp\ Icon \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$ the stamp icon $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Entering Contents

Select *Contents*→ ■ →Enter contents → ■

Displaying/Hiding Tasks

Select $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Show/Hide \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Show/Hide \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Setting Priority

Select $Options \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Priority \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a priority \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting Status of Tasks

Select $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Status \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a status of task \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

Press 🖾 (OK)

Tip

If you set *Hide* for task display/hide, your security code (page 1-22) needs to be entered to view or edit tasks. Only """ is displayed on the Tasks window, and title and deadline are not displayed on the Tasks window.

Opening Tasks

Main menu Tools Tasks

Changing the View Format of the Task List

Press $\[\]$ (Menu) \rightarrow Change $View \rightarrow \[\]$ \rightarrow Select the view format $\rightarrow \[\]$

Changing the Status of Tasks

Select a task \rightarrow \bigcirc (Status) \rightarrow $Not Completed/Completed/Overdue <math>\rightarrow$ \bigcirc

aiī

Using Information Registered in the Tasks

Make a call, send a message, or connect to a website by using a phone number, email address, or URL registered in the tasks.

Main Tools Tasks

- **1** Select a task→

 Select contents including information

 Select contents including
- **2** Select the information→

Making a Call to the Selected Phone Number

Select $Voice\ Call
ightarrow igotimes igo$

Sending a Message to the Selected Phone Number/Email Address

Select *Create Mail* → • *Create* → • Create a message

 See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 15-5) about the following operations.

Adding the Selected Phone Number/Email Address to Phone Book

Select Save Sender \longrightarrow Add New/Add \longrightarrow

 See "Adding a New Entry" (page 4-3) about the following operations.

Connection to the Selected URL

Select *Connect*→

 If you have selected a URL including location information, select Web Access/To Locations.

Deleting Tasks

Main Tools Tasks

Deleting One Task

Select a task \rightarrow \boxed{v} (Menu) \rightarrow $Delete \rightarrow$ \boxed{n} $\rightarrow One \rightarrow$ \boxed{n} $\rightarrow YES$ \rightarrow \boxed{n}

Deleting All Tasks

Press $\[\]$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \[\] \rightarrow All \rightarrow \[\] \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22)<math>\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \[\] \bigcirc$

• You can delete all tasks from the All View window.

Deleting Multiple Tasks

 $Press \ \boxdot \ (Menu) \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select \ Multi \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select \ tasks \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \boxdot \ (Delete) \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the Tasks Lock

Set the handset so that it asks for the security code (page 1-22) in order to browse the Tasks list.

- **1** Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Tasks Lock \rightarrow \bigcirc
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **3** Select $Lock|Unlock \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Time Table

Time table from Monday to Saturday can be created. Subjects, classrooms, and font colors of up to eight classes can be registered.

Registering a Time Table

Main Tools Time Table

Select a period→ \checkmark (Menu)→Edit→

Adding a Subject/Classroom/Teacher/Memo

Select an item \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter information \rightarrow \blacksquare

Setting the Background/Font Color
Select BG Color/Font Color→ Select a color→ ■

Press (OK)

Checking the Time Table

Main menu ► Tools ► Time Table

1 Select a period→

Tip

 You can switch between the subject window and the subject/classroom window by pressing (Change) on the Time Table window. 13

Copying Time Tables

Copy a registered time table and paste it in another time table.

Main

Tools

Time Table

2 Select the destination period→

• To copy another period, repeat Step 2.

3 Press 🖫 (OK)

Tip

If you want to cancel the time table you have copied, press (Menu) and select *Undo* after copying the time table.

Deleting Time Tables

Setting Time Table

Setting Starting/Ending Time of a Time Table

Main menu Tools Time Table

1 Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Set Time \rightarrow \bigcirc

2 Select a period → ■ → Enter a start time → ■ → Enter an end time → ■

Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

3 Press 🖫 (OK)

● To reset the changed start/end time to the default, press \checkmark (Menu) → Settings → \checkmark → Reset Time → \checkmark → YES → \checkmark

Kitchen Timer

Use Kitchen Timer as a countdown timer.

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Kitchen Timer

1 Enter countdown time→

2 Press • (Start)

3 Press (Stop)

Tip

- The level of the alarm volume is that set for the Sound Vol. setting (page 11-5). If manner mode is set to *Silent* or *Alarms* (page 11-2), no sound is emitted for the alarm.
- The alarm rings if you close the handset after starting the kitchen timer.

Voice Recorder

The voice recorder allows you to record sound and save the recording data to Data Folder of the handset or memory card. Although the possible length of recording time depends on the amount of available memory space in Data Folder, the maximum recording time is 90 minutes for each recording.

Please use the voice recorder exercising common morals and manners.

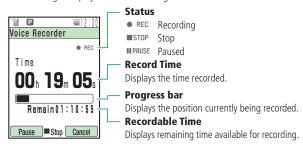
Recording Sound

Sounds recorded with the voice recorder are automatically saved in the *Ring Song*Tone* folder. You record through a microphone (mouthpiece).

- Please note that recording some concerts and shows aren't allowed even for personal use.
- If the handset receives a call while you are recording, the recording stops and is automatically saved in order to give priority to the call. If you don't want to receive calls while you are recording, set the handset to the offline mode (page 2-12).

Recording Window

The following is displayed on the recording window.



Recording

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Voice Recorder

1 Select $Record \rightarrow \bullet$ (twice)

- Press (Pause) to pause recording. To resume recording, press To save the recording data, press (Save).
- To stop recording, press
 ■.
- When the remaining time available for recording is less than 10 seconds, " • REC " flashes.

Changing Destination Folders

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Voice Recorder

Select $Record \rightarrow \blacksquare$

2 Press **(Menu)**→SelectStorage→

3 Select *Phone Memory* | *Memory Card* → **•**

Playing Recordings

Playback of what you recorded during a call (page 2-7) is possible.

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Voice Recorder

2 Select a file→

Number Memo

Viewing a Number Memo

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Number Memo

1 Select a number memo→•

Tip

- You can make a call by selecting a phone number registered in the Number Memo and pressing
- Select a phone number registered in the Number Memo and press to display the Circle Talk confirmation window. Then, press and hold to make a Circle Talk call.

Video Call (page 5-2)/Circle Talk (page 18-13)/To Phone Book (page 4-3)/Hide My ID (page 11-15)/Show My ID (page 11-15)/Add to List (page 11-14)/Send Message (pages 15-5, 15-10)/Delete

World Clock

Time displayed on the time display, event, and alarm is the time in a city you set in Set as Main City (page 13-38). If you set the time for City 1 and City 2, and select *World-Digital* or *World-Analog* in Idle Screen setting (page 11-7), then the time and date of City 1 and City 2 can be displayed in Standby.

World Clock Setting

Setting City 1/City 2



- **1** Select City 1/City 2→ ■
- **2** Use **●** to select a city

Setting the GMT Offset

Select a city by entering a GMT time difference.



- **Select** City 1/City $2 \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ (Menu) $\rightarrow GMT$ Offset
- **2** Use (to select the time difference → (twice)

Setting Daylight Saving Time (DST)

When the daylight saving time setting is *ON*, " *" is displayed on the world clock. " * " is displayed on the clock in Standby.



- **2** Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Editing City Names

Main menu Settings Phone Settings Clock

World Clock

1 Select City 1/City 2→ ■

2 Use to select a city→ (Menu)→ Rename City

3 Enter a city name→■

Tip

- To reset all city names, select City 1/City 2 → □ → ☑ (Menu) → Reset Name → □ → YES → □
- You can enter up to 13 characters for a city name, regardless of whether they are single-byte or double-byte characters. On some windows, a part of a city name may be omitted.

Switching the Main City

- **1** Select Set as Main City→ ■
- 2 Select City 1/City 2→ ■

Displaying World Clock

On the world clock window, you can view dates, time, and time difference by moving a cursor (yellow line) on the map. City 1 and City 2 of the World Clock settings (page 13-37) are displayed in green and red lines respectively.

Main menu Tools Useful Tools World Clock

- 1 Use •• to select a city

My Locations

Saving Location Information to My Locations

Retrieve location information and save it to My Locations.

- **1** Select an unregistered item→
- 2 Save the location information→ → Enter a title

Tip

- - Open Map/Location Mail/To Phone Book/Update/Delete/Edit Title

Location Navi

You can search for another person's current location using the procedure below.

Main Tools

- **1** Select *Location Navi*→
 - For the following procedure, follow the onscreen instructions.

Backup

Back up Phone Book entries, events and other information to a memory card.

Transferring Files to a Memory Card

Main

Tools

Backup

- **1** Select *Transfer All*→ → *Backup* → ●
- **2** Select data→
 - To select other data, repeat Step 2.

Marking/Unmarking All Data
Press ☑ (Menu)→Mark All/Unmark All→
■

- Press ☐ (Trans.)→ ☐ → Enter your security code (page 1-22)
 - When transferring Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to include images saved to Phone Book.
 Select NO to send the Phone Book entries without images.

 When transferring events/tasks, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to send previous events. Select *Futures Only* to send events without including previous events.

Note

- Some data, such as Keitaideco files, cannot be transferred to the memory card.
- Do not use a PC or other device to view or change a backup file in a memory card. The file may be damaged.
- Copyrighted data may not be transferred to the memory card or deleted from the handset after the transfer
- The security settings on the handset may not be reflected in the transferred data.

aiT

- Offline mode is set during backing up to the memory card. When the backing up of data is complete, offline mode is canceled.
- The name of transferred files are 2-digit year, month, and day and serial numbers.
- When you transfer bookmarks, those for both Yahoo! Keitai and PC websites are transferred.
- Since only a single content key backup file can be saved to a memory
 card, backing up another content key will overwrite the previously saved
 backup file. If you want to maintain the previously backed up content
 key, import the backup file from the memory card to the handset and
 then perform the backup operation again.
- The file whose content key has been moved to the memory card for backup will no longer be available on the handset.
- Importing a content key into the handset adds it to other content keys in the handset. It does not overwrite the current handset content keys.

Restoring

Main Tools Backup

1 Select Transfer $All \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Restore \ AlRestore \ B \rightarrow \blacksquare$

- The restoring method varies by models which performed data backup. If *There are no data*. is displayed when selecting either *Restore A* or *Restore B*, select the other item.
- **2** Select data→•
 - To select other data, repeat Step 2.

Marking/Unmarking All Data

Press \square (Menu) \rightarrow *Mark All/Unmark All* \rightarrow \square

3 Press (Read)→ → Enter your security code (page 1-22)

Restoring Phone Book/Events/Tasks/Messages/Bookmarks/ Notepad

Select $Add/Overwrite \rightarrow \blacksquare$ (twice) \rightarrow Select data $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

 If you select Add, you can add data without deleting data stored on the handset.

To restore data in Data Folder

Select *Add/Overwrite*→

 If you select Add, you can add data without deleting data stored on the handset.

Note

- Copyrighted data may not be restored to the handset or may be deleted from the memory card after the transfer.
- If the name of data restored in the handset is more than 32 characters, the characters that exceed the limit are omitted when the file is transferred.
- Even if security settings have been applied to the data restored on the handset, the security settings may not be applied to the transferred data.

Tip

- Offline mode is set while transferring data from a memory card. When data transfer is complete, offline mode is canceled.
- Depending on the amount of entries, it may take some time to restore Phone Book from the memory card.
- When you transfer bookmarks, those for both Yahoo! Keitai and PC websites are transferred.

Restoring Data on the SoftBank Handset (except 3G)

Transfer data on the SoftBank handset (except 3G) that is stored in the memory card to the handset.

Main Tools Backup

- **1** Select $Transfer\ All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow From\ non-3G \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Select data→
 - To select other data, repeat Step 2.

Marking/Unmarking All Data

Press $(Menu) \rightarrow Mark All/Unmark All \rightarrow$

Press (Read)→ Tenter your security code (page 1-22)

Note

- Some data created on the SoftBank handset (PDC) may not be restored to the handset
- Copyrighted data may not be restored to the handset or may be deleted from the memory card after the transfer.
- If the name of data restored in the handset is more than 32 characters, the characters that exceed the limit are omitted when the file is transferred.
- Even if security settings have been applied to the data restored on the handset, the security settings may not be applied to the transferred data.

aiT

- Offline mode is set while transferring data from a memory card. When data transfer is complete, offline mode is canceled.
- Transferred data is saved in the corresponding data folders on your handset respectively.

Deleting Backup Data

Data in the memory card transferred from the handset can be deleted collectively or individually.



1 Select Transfer $All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Delete\ Data \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Deleting All Data

Select $AU \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22)$

2 Select Select Data $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ Select data $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

Deleting Phone Book/Events/Tasks/Messages/Bookmarks/ Notepad

Select data→

■ To select other data, repeat Step 2.

Marking/Unmarking All Data

Press ☑ (Menu)→*Mark All/Unmark All*→

3 Press \square (Delete) $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \square$

Backing up Function Settings

Back up settings to a memory card and use it when restoring handset settings.

Transferring to Memory Card

Main Tools Backup

1 Select $Relocate \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$ your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow Backup \rightarrow \blacksquare$

2 Select an item→

To select another item, repeat this step.

3 Press ☑ (Trans.)→ □ → Enter a File Code→ Re-enter the code→ □ (twice)→ ■

A File Code is required for each backup file. The code is required when restoring settings to the handset.

Note

 Do not forget File Code and do not reveal it to others. If necessary, write down code.

Tip

 Handset switches to offline mode during backup. Once backup is completed, offline mode is canceled.

Restoring Settings

Setting data of the handset or another SoftBank handset stored in the memory card can be restored to the handset.

Main Tools Backup

- Select $Relocate \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$ your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow RestorelFrom\ non-3G \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- 2 Select setting data→ → Enter the security code for backups → □ (twice) → ●
 Setting data is restored, and the handset automatically restarts.

Tip

- Offline mode is set while restoring data from a memory card. When restoration is complete, offline mode is canceled.

Using International Call Service

When making an international call, simply add the international code and then select a country code from a list after entering the other party's phone number. Also change the international code and add entries to the country code list.

A separate application is required for using the international call service.
 For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).

Changing the International Code



Select Intl. Code→ ■→Enter your security code (page 1-22)

The default international code appears.

2 Enter the new code→ ■

Adding an Entry to the Country Code List

The country code list already includes the country codes of 17 countries. You can also edit and add entries. The list can contain up to 20 entries.



- **1** Select CountryNumber→ ■
- **2** Press \bigcirc (Menu) $\rightarrow Add \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **3** Enter a country name→
- 4 Enter a country code→ ■

The country code is added.

qiT

 After selecting a country name in the country code list, press (Menu) to perform the following:

Edit/Delete*

* Only the entries for the three additional country codes can be deleted.

Shortcut Menu

If you assign frequently used functions to the Shortcut menu, you will be able to access them quickly and easily.

Setting the Shortcut Menu

Up to 40 items of the handset's functions can be registered. Names and icons of the registered functions can be changed.

1 Access a function you want to assign→

¬
¬

2 Press 🖫 (Assign)

Tip

• The following functions are assigned as defaults.

- Create Message
- Message BoxCalendar
- Main MenuTime Table

- Media PlayerCalculator
- IC Card Lock

Accessing a Function from the Shortcut Menu

1 In Standby, press 🕟

2 Select a function→

Note

• Up to two functions can be called up from the shortcut menu.

Tip

- If there is information you haven't viewed, the indicator appears on Information Prompt (page 1-10), and you can view the information.
- If you call up a file registered in the shortcut menu, certain operations may not be available.

Editing the Function Names

- 1 In Standby, press 🕟
- **2** Select a function $\rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Edit\ Title \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **3** Enter a title→●

Tip

The names of preset functions (left) cannot be changed.

Changing the Shortcut Icons

- 1 In Standby, press 🕟
- **2** Select a function $\rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ (Menu) \rightarrow *Change Icon* $\rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$

Setting an Icon Preinstalled in Your HandsetSelect *Preset Icons*→ Select an icon→

Setting an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card
Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card* → Select an image →

■ → Use 🛂 to adjust the position of the image to clip →

∑ (Cut)→ ■

Tip

• The icons of preset functions (page 13-44) cannot be changed.

Moving Icons

- 1 In Standby, press 🕞
- **2** Select a function $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ (Menu) \rightarrow Arrange Icons $\rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **3** Select a destination→

Deleting Shortcut Icons

- 1 In Standby, press 🕞
- **2** Select a function→ (Menu)

Deleting One Shortcut Icon

Select $Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Deleting All Shortcut Icons

Select $Delete\ All \rightarrow \blacksquare$ \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22) \rightarrow YES

Tip

 The preset functions (page 13-44) cannot be deleted from the shortcut menu.

Sending Touch Tones

Send touch tones to use interactive voice response services and other types of touchtone services.

Sending Individual Touch Tones

1 Press any of the or to and, ** and the keys during a call

Sending Touch Tones Sequentially

Phone Book is useful for storing sequences of touch tones (page 4-3) for remotely operating your home answering machine and other devices.

- After the handset is connected, press 🗹 (Menu)
- 3 Select the phone number containing the touch tones→☑ (Menu)
- **4** Select Send Tone→
 - You can send up to 32 touch tones at one time.

Using Pause (P) in Touch Tone Sequences

The pause "P" allows you to send sequences of touch tones, each separated with a pause "P". It is convenient if you register multiple touch tones such as remote operation numbers of your home phone.

Saving Touch Tones to Phone Book

Example: Save the following three numbers.

Phone number : 03-123X-XXX3

Answering machine code · #7777 Answering machine playback code:#1

Enter 03123XXXX3P#7777P#1 in Phone Number field

• For details on saving to Phone Book, see page 4-3.

Sending Touch Tones

Open a Phone Book entry containing the touch tones

• For details on how to access a Phone Book entry, see page 4-8.

Press 🔼

A call is made to the phone number before the first "P".

Press 🔳

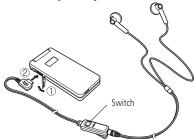
The sequence of touch tones before the next "P" is sent.

Repeat this step until all the touch tones have been sent.

Using the Stereo Earphone (optional)

Use Stereo Earphone (optional) for receiving/making calls. Earphone Switch is convenient for one-touch access to incoming calls or set a number to make one-touch calls to that number. Auto Answer setting is also available.

- Open the earphone microphone jack cover (1)
- Insert the plug for the Stereo Earphone into the earphone/microphone jack (2)



Note

- When plugging or unplugging the Stereo Earphone into/from the earphone microphone jack, take care to ensure that the plug is parallel to the iack.
- Do not attempt to insert a Stereo Earphone plug with the incorrect shape into the earphone microphone jack.
- Use only the TSLAU1 Stereo Earphone (optional). It may not be possible to plug third-party stereo earphones into this earphone microphone jack, and some may be incompatible with the handset.

Setting the Phone Number

Main menu Settings Call Settings Earphone

1 Select $ON \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Search Number from Phone Book

Select *Phone Book* $\rightarrow \square$ \rightarrow Select an entry $\rightarrow \square$ \rightarrow Select a phone number $\rightarrow \square$ (twice)

Entering Number Manually

Select **Phone Number** \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter a phone number \rightarrow \bigcirc (twice)

One-touch Calls

- 1 In Standby, press and hold Switch
 - Press and hold Switch again to cancel outgoing call.
- **2** Press and hold Switch to end the call
 - Alternatively, press [power] to end the call.

One-touch Answering

- When a call is received, press and hold Switch of the remote control
- 2 Press and hold Switch of the remote control to end the call
 - Alternatively, you can press power to end the call.

Tip

 If you select Manner mode (page 11-2) when the Stereo Earphone is connected, the ringtone set in normal mode is played through the earphones.

Setting Auto Answer

When the Stereo Earphone is connected, you can set the handset up so that you can accept voice calls without having to press a key. Also change the length of time before a call is answered.



- 2 Select Set Duration→ → Enter the answer time → ■

Note

- If you set Auto Answer and the Answering Machine (page 13-18), Answering Machine is given priority.
- If you set Auto Answer and Voice Mail (page 14-5), the one with shorter answering time is given priority. If the answering time is the same, Voice Mail is given priority.

Optional Services	14-2	
Call Forward		
Setting/Activating Call Forward	14-3	
Deactivating Call Forward/Voice Mail	14-4	
Voice Mail	14-5	
Activating Voice Mail	14-5	
Listening to Your Voice Mail	14-6	
Missed Call Notification	14-6	
Call Waiting14		
Setting/Activating Call Waiting	14-6	
Using Call Waiting	14-6	
Switching between Two Callers	14-7	
Multiparty Call	14-7	
Making Calls to Other Parties during a Call	14-7	
Switching between Parties	14-7	
Talking to All Parties	14-8	
Call Barring	14-8	
Activating Call Barring	14-8	
Deactivating Call Barring	14-9	
Changing Your Call Barring Service Code	14-9	

Optional Services

- For details on services, contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).
- If you are out of the service area, you cannot operate the service from the

handset. • A separate subs	handset. A separate subscription is required to use the Call Waiting or Multiparty service. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).	
Call Forward	Use this service to forward calls to a preset phone number (page 14-3).	
Voice Mail	This service allows a caller to leave a message at the Voice Mail Center when your handset is out of range or a call is in progress (page 14-5). Missed Call Notification Information Prompt (page 1-10) notifies you of calls that your handset could not receive while outside the service area or handset was powered off.	
Call Waiting	This service allows you to place a call on hold to receive another incoming call (page 14-6).	

Multiparty Call	Make or receive a call during a call and talk to multiple parties simultaneously (page 14-7).
Call Barring	Stop all outgoing and incoming calls including international calls (page 14-8).
Caller ID	This service allows you to notify your phone number to the other party when you make a call and allows you to confirm the phone number of a caller (page 11-15).

Call Forward

Calls and video calls are transferred to a specified phone if the handset is OFF or is out of the service area. If **All Calls** is selected for the transfer conditions, " " (Voice/Video), " (Voice Call) or " (Video Call) is displayed in Standby.

Setting/Activating Call Forward



1 Select Diverts ON→ → Voice Call|Video Call| Voice|Video → ■

● To confirm the current Call Forward setting, select *Status*.

Diverting All Calls to the Preset Number

The ringtone does not sound before forwarding the call. Select *All Calls* →

2 Set a phone number

Selecting an Entry from Phone Book

Select $Phone Book \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$ an entry $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$ a phone number $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (twice) $\rightarrow Connect$ to the network automatically $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Entering a Phone Number Directly

Select *Phone Number* → ■→Enter a phone number → ■ (twice) →Connect to the network automatically → ■

Selecting a Phone Number from the Call Log

Select *Call Log* \longrightarrow Select a phone number \longrightarrow (twice) \longrightarrow Connect to the network automatically \longrightarrow

Note

- Call Forward and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously, but Call Forward for video calls is available with Voice Mail.
- If you activate Call Forward while you are using Voice Mail, Voice Mail is deactivated.
- Call Forward cannot be used while All Outgoings or All Incomings is selected for Call Barring (page 14-8) (priority is given to Call Barring).
- When forwarding a video call, set a destination phone that supports 3G-324M standard video calls. The video call will not be forwarded if the destination phone does not support 3G-324M video calls.

Tip

- You cannot set the following phone numbers as forwarding numbers.
 - Phone numbers starting from "1" (ex. 110, 119, 118)
 - Phone numbers starting from "0120" (toll-free numbers)
 - Phone numbers starting from 00 (ex. international phone number prefix 001 or 0041)
 - Phone numbers starting from "0990" (dial Q2 and others)

Answering Machine ring time9 seconds
In this case, Answering Machine takes priority, but priority may change depending on signal strength.

Receiving calls after activating Call Forward

- If you press
 while a ringtone is sounding, you can talk to a caller.
 - If you set **All Calls**, the handset does not receive calls, but they are forwarded to a forwarding number.

Deactivating Call Forward/Voice Mail



1 Select DeactivateAll→ ■

 To confirm the current Call Forward/Voice Mail settings, select Status.

Note

- If you select *DeactivateAll*, both Call Forward and Voice Mail are deactivated.
- If you are not using Call Forward nor Voice Mail (page 14-5), and you
 want to reject a call, press (Divert) while the phone is ringing.

Voice Mail

Transfer calls to Voice Mail Center (ie: when your handset is out of range or a call is in progress). If you set *All Calls* in the forward settings to forward calls to the Voice Mail Center, "" is displayed in Standby. When the Voice Mail Center receives a new message, Information Prompt (page 1-10) appears if the Missed Call Notification function (page 14-6) is set.

""" appears when you have a new message.

Activating Voice Mail



- **1** Select *Voicemail ON*→
 - To confirm the current Voice Mail setting, select *Status*.
- **2** Select $No \ Answer \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc$ Select the answer time $\rightarrow \bigcirc$
 - If you select All Calls, calls are forwarded to the Voice Mail Center without ringing or vibrating the handset.

Note

- Voice Mail and Call Forward cannot be set simultaneously, but Call Forward for video calls is available with Voice Mail
- If you activate Voice Mail while you are using Call Forward, Call Forward is deactivated.

Receiving calls after activating Voice Mail

- If you press
 while a ringtone is sounding, you can talk to a caller.
 - If you set All Calls, the handset does not receive calls, but they are forwarded to the Voice Mail Center.

Voice Mail

 Access the Personal Options menu from Voice Mail Center to set/customize outgoing message. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36). 14

Main settings Call Settings

Diverting

1 Select Listen $VM \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Tip

 To access Voice Mail messages while overseas, dial +819066514170 (connection fees apply).

Missed Call Notification

Information Prompt (page 1-10) notifies you about the calls that the handset could not receive because it was out of the service area or the power was off while Voice Mail was set. If Voice Mail Center receives a message while you are on another line, the handset receives a notification.

- 1 In Standby, enter 1414 and press 🗷
 - Follow the voice prompts.

Tip

- You can also set it with the procedures below.
 Main menu → Settings → Call Settings → Call Services →
 Missed Calls → (twice)
- To set from a fixed-line phone in Japan, dial 0906651414.
- To set from outside Japan, dial +819066514191 (connection fees apply).

Call Waiting

Call Services

Call Waiting service enables you to answer a newly received voice call while you are talking on another voice call. Also use this service to put your current voice call on hold while you make a voice call to someone else.

This service is unavailable for Video calls.

Setting/Activating Call Waiting



1 Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

• To confirm the current Call Waiting setting, select *Status*.

Using Call Waiting

1 During a call, the Call Waiting tone is heard

The name and phone number of the caller appear on the display.

The original caller is placed on hold and a connection is established with the second caller. Both original and second names are displayed.

Tip

- When Voice Mail or Call Forward is active, unanswered calls are transferred to Voice Mail Center or the forwarding number. When active service is set to All Calls, Call Waiting is disabled.
- To forward a call received while you are on another line, set No Answer for the Call Forward.
- When the Call Waiting tone is heard, press (Menu) to perform the following:

Answer/End & Answer/Reject Call/Divert/End All Calls

Switching between Two Callers

- 1 During Call Waiting, press 🚅 🖊
 - Press 🖅 🖊 to switch between callers.

If a caller terminates a call during Call Waiting

● A ringtone sounds and the screen displays *Holding*. Press ✓ to start talking with a person on hold.

Multiparty Call

Call other parties during a call and switch between the parties or talk to multiple parties simultaneously. Connect with up to five parties simultaneously.

This service is unavailable for video calls.

Making Calls to Other Parties during a Call

1 During a call, enter a phone number→✓

The original party is placed on hold and you can talk to another party.

● You can select a phone number from Phone Book (page 4-8) or call log (page 2-8) after pressing ☑ (Menu).

Switching between Parties

- Press [₽]
 - Press 🖅 🖊 to switch between callers.

If a caller terminates a call during a call

A ringtone sounds and the screen displays *Holding*. Press \(\sigma \) to start talking with a person on hold. 14

Talking to All Parties

1 During a call, enter a phone number→

2 When the other party answers, press **№** (Menu)

3 Select *Multiparty* \rightarrow \rightarrow *Multiparty* \rightarrow \bigcirc

You can talk to all parties.

Pressing eduring a Multiparty call

●End calls with all parties.

Ending a line during a Multiparty call

Other lines remain connected.

Talking to the selected party only

● Select a party and press ☑ (Menu) → *Multiparty* → ● → *Private*. You can talk to the selected party and other parties are placed on hold.

Call Barring

Restrict outgoing and incoming voice calls, video calls and SMS messages.

Activating Call Barring



• To confirm the current Call Barring setting, select *Status*.

Restricting Outgoing Calls

Select *Outgoing Call* → ■ → Select a barring condition → ■ → Enter your call barring service code (page 1-22) → Connect to the network automatically → ■

All Outgoings : Stop all outgoing calls.

All Out-Intl. : Stop all outgoing international calls.

Out-Intl.* : Stop all outgoing international calls except to Japan.

* The handset does not support international roaming, but settings are saved to the Service Center

Restricting Incoming Calls

Select *Incoming Call* → ■ → Select a barring condition → ■ → Enter your call barring service code (page 1-22) → Connect to the network automatically → ■

All Incomings: Stop all Incoming calls.

All If Roamed* : Stop all Incoming international calls.

- * The handset does not support international roaming, but settings are saved to the Service Center.
- After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

Note

- You can still make emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard)) when the call barring service is activated.
- You cannot use All Outgoings and All Incomings if you have started using the Call Forward or Voice Mail service. (Call Forward or Voice Mail is given priority.)
- If call barring service code (page 1-22) is incorrectly entered three consecutive times, Call Barring settings are locked. Change call barring service code and center access code (page 1-22). For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).

Tip

 If a call is made while Call Barring is active, a message informs you that Call Barring is set. The message may not appear immediately, depending on your location. If message does not appear, check your Call Barring settings.

Deactivating Call Barring

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Call Services ► Call Barring

- 1 Select Cancel All→ → Enter your call barring service code (page 1-22)→Connect to the network automatically →
 - After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

Changing Your Call Barring Service Code



- **1** Select Security Code→
- **2** Enter your current call barring service code
 - **3** Enter your new call barring service code→
- **4** Re-enter your new call barring service code for confirmation→ (twice)
 - After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

About Messaging	15-2
Customizing Handset Address	
Incoming Messages	15-3
Checking New Messages	15-3
Checking Received Messages	15-4
Forwarding Messages from Server Mail Box	15-5
Creating & Sending an S! Mail	15-!
Available Options When You Enter an Address	15-6
Available Options When You Enter a Text	15-6
Decorating the Text	15-7
Attaching Files	15-8
Feeling Setting	15-9
Other Functions	15-9
Creating & Sending an SMS Message	
Other Functions	15-11
Drafts	
Message Box	
Displaying Messages in the Message Box	15-12
Setting Security for Message Box	15-13
Changing the Message Box List Display Mode	15-13
Switching the Message List Display Mode	15-14
Operations While Viewing Messages	15-14
Managing Message Folders	15-15
Replying to Messages	15-16
Forwarding Messages	15-16
Making a Call to the Sender of the Message	15-17
Checking Delivery Report Linked Information	15-17
	15-17
Saving Attached Files	15-18 15-18
Editing/Sending the Unsent Messages Protecting/Unprotecting Messages	15-18
Deleting Messages	15-16
Received/Sent Messages Operations	15-19
neceived/ Jeilt iviessages Operations	13-13

erver Mail Operations	15-20
Using the Mail List	15-20
Forwarding Server Messages	15-21
Deleting Server Messages	15-21
Checking the Server Mail Box Status	15-22
Aessage Settings	15-22
Display Settings	15-22
Creating Settings	15-22
Send Settings	15-23
Receive Settings	15-24
Setting 3D Pictogram Display	15-24

About Messaging

S! Mail

Exchange long text messages, pictures, sounds, vObjects, etc. with other SoftBank handsets, PCs and other devices connected to the Internet.

• To use S! Mail and receive email, an additional contract is required.

SMS

The Short Message Service (SMS) allows you to exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets.

Tip

• Retry Function

When the other party's handset is turned off or out of range, the message is stored on the Server Mail Box and will be sent when the signal is available.

Customizing Handset Address

Change the account name (part before @) of your handset address.

(Custom)

Account Name@softbank.ne.jp

- For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).
- This operation uses Yahoo! Keitai access.
- Before using Mail, retrieve the network connection information (page 11-16).
- Changing your email address is an effective way of preventing spam.
- **1** In Standby, press ☑→設定・申込 (Settings/Applications)
- Select 各種変更手続き (Changing Applications)→ →オリジナルメール設定 (メール各種設定) (Original Mail/Mail settings)→
 - Follow the onscreen instructions.

Tip

Alternatively, access Messaging Settings as follows:
 Main menu → Messaging → Settings → Mail Address

Incoming Messages

When a message arrives, ringtone sounds and animation plays. "\(\equiv \) appears at top of Display. When a "Feeling Mail" arrives, graphics indicating the sender's mood appears in Information Prompt. Incoming messages are saved to \(Received \)

Check Information Prompt (page 1-10) to confirm any unread messages. When you have unread "Feeling Mail," graphics indicating the sender's mood appears in the background. For more than one "Feeling Mail," background graphic is based on the most recent message.

- Received contains General folder, Ku-man folder and 18 user folders. Sort messages to folders to organize incoming messages (page 15-15).
- When you receive an S! Mail message, the reception method varies depending on how big the file is or if there are any attachments. Under the defaults set specified when you purchased the phone, all content is automatically received.
- **1** When Information Prompt appears, select *New Messages*→ ■
- **2** Select a folder→ Select a message → •

Note

 If a message has 20 or more attached files, the 20th and subsequent files are not received.

Tip

- If you receive a message during a call, an electronic tone will sound.
- When you set *Delivery Check* (page 15-23) to *ASK* and then send mail with a phone number as the address, you will receive a mail delivery report.

Checking New Messages

Main menu Messaging

1 Select *Retrieve Msg.*→

Insufficient Memory

When Messaging memory is low, the oldest message is automatically deleted to receive an incoming message.

Note

Incoming Messages During Handset Use

If Priority (page 11-15) is set to *Pause*, incoming messages are notified by a confirmation message during handset use. Choose *Read Now* or *Read Later*.

Checking Received Messages

You can check for received mail using Received for the Message Box.

When the sender's address contains 61 or more single-byte characters

Main menu Messaging Message Box

Received

Select a folder→ → Select a message → ■

 If you set Retrieve Mode (page 15-24) to Phone # Only or Deferred, select Retrieve Mail when it is displayed in the message text to retrieve the remaining data.

Note

- If you receive the rest of the message, transmission fees may be charged on the recipient's side. See the SoftBank website (www.softbank.jp) for details.
- It may be impossible to display/play a file until you obtain a content key (content license) depending on the file.
- Mail messages or attachments of approximately 300 KB or larger cannot be entirely received.

Tip

- Alternatively, you can press in Standby to access the Messaging menu.
- When a new SMS with 161 or more single-byte characters is received, the messages will be combined automatically. While receiving a combined message, the message *Linking SMS*. is displayed in the Received message in the Message Box.
- If you set Retrieve Mode (page 15-24) to *Phone # Only** or *Deferred*, and you are sent S! Mail for which any of the following apply, the S! Mail is held temporarily in the Server Mail Box and part of the mail (the first part) is sent to your SoftBank mobile phone as an S! Mail notification. When you receive the S! Mail notification, "==" appears on the screen.
 - When an S! Mail exceeds 284 characters (284 bytes)
 - · When a file is attached
 - · When multiple addresses are specified
 - When the subject contains 41 or more single-byte characters
 - When the sender's address contains 61 or more single-byte characters *S! Mail addressed to a phone number is automatically received.
- You can reply or forward (page 15-16) messages from received messages.

Forwarding Messages from Server Mail Box

When you receive an S! Mail notification, manually forward the message from the Server Mail Box to your PC or other device.

- **1** Open an S! Mail notification→¬¬ (Menu)→*Divert*
- **2** Select Server Mail→

 ■
- **3** Select $Keep|Do \ not \ Keep \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter \ an \ address$
 - For details on how to enter address, see below.
- 4 Press (Divert)

Creating & Sending an S! Mail

You can use S! Mail to send single messages consisting of up to 15,000 double-byte or 30,720 single-byte characters and attach files such as images or melodies

 You can send an S! Mail message of up to 300 KB including the address, subject, body text and attachment files. The maximum number of characters allowed varies depending on the data size of the attached file.

Main Messaging Create Msg.

- **1** Select $Address \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter$ an address
 - Specify a phone number (up to 24 digits) or an email address (up to 254 characters). Up to 20 addresses are allowed with To, Cc, and Bcc combined.

Selecting an Address from Phone Book

Select *Phone Book* → ■ → Select an entry → ■ → Select a phone number/email address → ■

Entering a Phone Number/Email Address Directly

Select *Phone Number/Email* → ■ → Enter a phone number/email address → ■

Selecting from Simple Input

 You can select from addresses that you have saved to Simple Input (page 15-22) and enter.

Select *Simple Input*→ ■ → Select an entry → ■

Selecting an Address from the Sent/Received Log

Select **Sent Log/Received Log** \rightarrow Select a log \rightarrow

Selecting an Address from a Group

 You can select from addresses that you have saved to Group (page 15-22) and enter them.

Select *Group*→ ■ → Select a group → ■

- **2** Select $Subject \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter a subject \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **3** Select $Text \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter a message \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Inserting a Phone Number, etc.

Phone numbers, emoticons, and phrases can be inserted from Notepad, Signature, Phone Book, owner information, Sent log, etc. (page 3-14).

- 4 Attach files
 - For details on how to attach files, see page 15-8.
- **5** Press $(Send) \rightarrow OK \rightarrow \bullet$

The message is sent.

Messaging

 If you select Notify Only Once, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

Note

- You cannot create a message if there is insufficient memory. Delete unnecessary messages in *Message Box* (page 15-19) or change the Auto-delete setting (page 15-15) to its setting at time of purchase of *Set*.
- If the other party's handset doesn't support S! Mail, it might be displayed differently.

Tip

 By pressing and holding \(\bigcup \) \(\bigcup \) in Standby, you can view Sent log/ Received log. You can also create S! Mail by selecting a log and pressing \(\bigcup \) (Mail).

Available Options When You Enter an Address

An address can be added or deleted after you enter it. Also save it to Phone Book, change the address type, or set the category.

In the Create Message window, select the address field

Adding Recipients

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow Add Address \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select an address \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc (OK)

• For details on how to enter addresses, see page 15-5.

Deleting One Recipient

Press \longrightarrow Select a recipient \longrightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \longrightarrow $Delete \longrightarrow \bigcirc$ \longrightarrow \bigcirc One

Deleting All Recipients

Press ☑ (Menu)→**Delete All**→

Deleting Multiple Recipients

Press \longrightarrow \searrow (Menu) \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow Select Multi \rightarrow \bigcirc Select recipients \rightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow \bigcirc (Delete) \rightarrow \bigcirc (OK)

Storing a Recipient's Information in Phone Book

Press \longrightarrow Select a recipient \longrightarrow [Menu) \rightarrow Save Sender \longrightarrow Add New/Add \longrightarrow \blacksquare

 See "Adding a New Entry" (page 4-3) about the following operations.

Switching To/Cc/Bcc for an Address

Press \longrightarrow Select a recipient \longrightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \longrightarrow To/Cc/Bcc \longrightarrow \longrightarrow \bigcirc (OK)

To: The recipient's address.

Cc : Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the To field to other addresses. Addresses entered in the Cc (carbon copy) field are also displayed to the other recipients.

Bcc: Addresses entered in the *Bcc* (blind carbon copy) field are not displayed to the other recipients.

Registering All Addresses into a Group

Press $\[\]$ (Menu) \rightarrow **To** $\[Group \rightarrow \]$ (twice) \rightarrow Select a group $\rightarrow \]$ Enter a group name $\rightarrow \[\]$

Available Options When You Enter a Text

Text can be edited or deleted after you enter it. Also insert a mail template or save entered text as a template.

1 In the Create Message window, select the text

Editing the Text

Press ■→Edit the text→■

Deleting the Text

Press 🖅 (Menu)→*Clear Field*→ 🔳

Switching the Text to Mail Template

 If you call up a template while creating a message, a confirmation window appears asking you whether you want to delete text and insert the template. The message you have created will be deleted if you select YES.

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow *Templates* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow *Phone Memory*/ *Memory Card* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a template \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow *YES* \rightarrow \bigcirc Edit the text \rightarrow \bigcirc

Saving the Entered Text as a Template

Press ☑ (Menu)→Save Template→ ■→Edit a title→ ■→
Phone Memory/Memory Card→ ■

Decorating the Text

This function allows you to make your message more visually appealing by changing the size and color of text, background color, assigning actions to text, and inserting lines or images into your message. Also decorate the text easily using mail templates for creating messages.

1 In the Create Message window, select the text→

The Arrange window appears.

2 Decorate the text

Changing Font Color/Font Size

Select *Font Color/Font Size* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a color/size \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter a message

Blinking/Scrolling/Swinging a Text

Select *Blink/Telop/Swing* → Enter a message

Aligning a Text

Select $LineUp \rightarrow \blacksquare$ \rightarrow Select the position of the entered text \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter a message

Inserting a Line

Select **Partition**→

Inserting an Image/Sound

Select Picture/Sound→ Phone Memory/Memory Card→

■→Select an image/sound/My Pictograms item→■

Inserting an My Pictograms item

Select *MyPictograms* → My Pictograms item →

Select the Background Color

Select $ScreenColor \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a color \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Deleting Decorations Individually

Deleting All Decorations

Select $Cancel \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Delete \ All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

Tip

- When you decorate message text, the " \(\mathbb{M}\) " indicator appears on the display. If you press \(\mathbb{M}\) (Menu) and select \(\textit{Preview}\), the text preview will be displayed.
- If you send a decorated message to a device (PC, for example) other than an HTML-enabled SoftBank handset, decorated parts may not be displayed properly.
- Animation files preinstalled in *Pictures* folder of Data Folder can be inserted when you select *Picture*. For the items which can be inserted, see Arrange-picture List (page 21-15).

Changing the Decorations

By selecting a range of entered text, decorations such as color, size, flashing, telop, swing, and alignments can be set. Also change/reset the decorations.

- 1 In the Create Message window, select the text→

 →Enter a message
- Press (Range•paste)→Start→ → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → Arrange → ■
- Decorate the selected text

 Deleting the Decorations of the Selected Text

 Select Cancel→ → Select a decoration→ → ☆ (Delete)

Using Mail Template

Decorate the text easily by inserting the mail template.

- 2 Select a mail template → → Edit the text → ■

Tip

 When there is already text entered in the message, a confirmation window appears asking whether to insert the template and delete the entered text.

Attaching Files

In S! Mail, you can attach a total of up to 20 images and melodies.

In the Create Message window, select $Files \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Attaching a File Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card
Select Data Folder→ ■→Phone Memory/Memory Card→ ■

→Select a file→

Taking a Picture to Attach

Select *Take Picture* → Take a picture →

Recording a Video to Attach

Select $Record\ Video \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ (attach)

Note

 If unavailable is displayed for forward in the Details of a file (page 9-9), the file cannot be sent as an attachment.

Tip

- When selecting the file in a folder, select a folder and press
- While selecting the attached file, press (Menu) to perform the following:

Details/Delete

Feeling Setting

A Feeling setting is a feature which can notify the recipient a new message with the emoticon.

In the Create Message window, select Feeling→
 →Select the Feeling icon→

Note

 When you send a message with an emoticon to a handset that doesn't support the Feeling setting, the emoticon is displayed as a regular pictograph on the subject field.

Other Functions

1 Open the Create Message window

Switching the Mail Type to SMS

Select $Type \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow SMS \rightarrow \bigcirc$

- If a message contains something that cannot be sent using SMS, a confirmation window will appear. The contents which cannot be sent will be deleted if you select *Change*.
- If a message exceeds the maximum number of characters allowed in SMS, a confirmation window will appear. By selecting *Cut to Fit SMS*, you can delete part of the message so it won't exceed the number of maximum characters.

Saving the Message as a Draft Message to Drafts

Press [x] (Menu) $\rightarrow Save to Draft \rightarrow [\bullet] \rightarrow Save \rightarrow [\bullet]$

Checking the Content Before Sending a Message

Press ② or ☑ (Menu)→*Preview*→ ■

Checking Delivery Status of Sent Message

Select $Options \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow DeliveryCheck \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Specifying a Time for Delivering Messages from the Service Center to Recipients

Select $Options \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Delivery\ Time \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$ the delivery time $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the Length of Time a Sent Message is Stored on Server Mail Box

Select $Options \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Expiry\ Time \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select the expiry time $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the Message Priority Level

Select $Options \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Priority \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select the priority \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting/Canceling Your Reply to Address

For details on setting Replay to address, see page 15-23.
 Select Options → Peply to → Activate/Deactivate

→ ■ → Kepty to → ■ → Activate Deactiva

Deleting Checked Received Messages on the Sender's Side Automatically

Select $Options \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Self-delete \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow ON \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Note

 If you change the message type from S! Mail to SMS, the following items are deleted.
 Email address/Cc and Bcc setting/Subject/Attached file/Decoration and

Arrange settings/Feeling setting

Tip

- If you haven't set the date or time on *Delivery Time*, messages are sent out immediately.
- S! Mail messages saved on the Server Mail Box are deleted automatically when the specified expiry time is reached.

Creating & Sending an SMS Message

The Short Message Service (SMS) allows you to exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets. Up to 70 characters (140 bytes) can be sent if they include double-byte and single-byte katakana or pictographs. If all the characters are single-byte alphanumerics or single-byte symbols, up to 160 characters can be sent

Main menu Messaging Create Msg.

1 Select $Text \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter a message \rightarrow \blacksquare$

2 Select $Address \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter a phone number$

Selecting a Phone Number from Phone Book

Select **Phone Book** \rightarrow Select an entry \rightarrow Select a phone number \rightarrow \blacksquare

Entering a Phone Number Directly

Select $Phone \ Number \rightarrow \blacksquare$ \rightarrow Enter a phone number $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Selecting from Simple Input

 You can select from addresses that you have saved to Simple Input (page 15-22) and enter them.

Select *Simple Input*→ ■ → Select an entry→ ■

Selecting a Phone Number from the Sent Log/Received Log

Select $Sent Log/Received Log \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Select a log \rightarrow \square$

Selecting Phone Numbers from a Group

 You can select from addresses that you have saved to a Group (page 15-22) and enter them.

Select $Group \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a group \rightarrow \blacksquare$

3 Press \square (Send) $\rightarrow OK \rightarrow \blacksquare$

The message is sent.

 If you select Notify Only Once, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

Note

 When you send a message, transmission fees will be charged for every recipient entered in the address field.

Tip

- After Step 2, press (Menu) to perform the following:
 Preview/Save to Draft/Add Address/Delete All/Save Sender/ To Group
- By pressing and holding \(\bigcirc \) \(\bigcirc \) in Standby, you can view Sent log/
 Received log. You can also create SMS by selecting a log and pressing
 \(\bigcirc \) (Mail).

Other Functions

When you send an SMS message, the following options are available. The options can be configured in advance (page 15-23).

1 Open the Create Message window

Switching the Mail Type to S! Mail

Select $Type \rightarrow \bigcirc S! Mail \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Setting the Length of Time a Sent Message is Stored on Server Mail Box

Select $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Expiry\ Time \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select the expiry time $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

Checking Whether Sent Messages were Delivered to Recipient

Select $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow DeliveryCheck \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Note

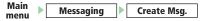
- By performing the following operations, you can also change the mail type from SMS to S! Mail automatically. If these items are deleted, the message type will be reset to SMS automatically.
 Add email address/Set Cc/Bcc setting/Enter Subject/Attach file/Set Feeling setting
- By pressing (Menu) and selecting *Templates* or *Arrange* while entering text, a confirmation window will appear asking you whether you want to switch from SMS to S! Mail. If you want to switch to S! Mail, select *Change to S!Mail*. If you want to create a message as an SMS message, select *Cut to Fit SMS*. If you select *Edit Message*, you can go back to editing the message.

qiT

 Saved SMS messages are deleted when the specified expiry time is reached.

Drafts

Saving the Message as a Draft Message to Drafts



- Select an item→ → Enter/edit the selected item
- **2** Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow Save to Draft \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Save \rightarrow \bigcirc

Editing/Sending Draft Messages

Main Messaging Drafts

- **1** Select a message→ → Select an item → ■
- **2** Edit the selected item $\rightarrow \square$ (Send) $\rightarrow OK \rightarrow \square$

Tip

Delete/Send Multi/Display/Call Address/Save Sender/Export/ Sort by/Filter

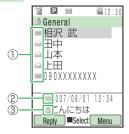
Message Box

Received and sent messages are saved to the **Received** and **Sent** message boxes respectively. Created messages that have not been sent are saved to the **Drafts** message box, and messages that have failed to be sent are saved to the **Unsent Msg.** message box.

- For details on an available amount of messages you can store, see "Storage Capacity" on page 21-16.
- When there are unread messages in *Received*, the "■" indicator appears.

Displaying Messages in the Message Box

Message List Window



Received Message List

- ①Message Status
- Unread Message with Attachment(s)
- Unread Message without Attachments
- Read Message with Attachment(s)
- Read Message without Attachments
- Unread S! Mail Notification

- Read S! Mail Notification
- Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Read Delivery Report
- Sent Message without Attachments/Read Delivery Report
- Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Unread Delivery Report
- Sent Message without Attachments/Unread Delivery Report
- Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Confirming Delivery
- Sent Message without Attachments/Confirming Delivery
- Sent Message with Attachment(s)/No Delivery Confirmation
- Sent Message without Attachments/No Delivery Confirmation
- Sent Wessage Without Attachments/No Delivery
- Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)
- Rartly Sent Message without Attachments
- Report | Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Read Delivery Report
- Report Message without Attachments/Read Delivery Report
- Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Unread Delivery Report
- Partly Sent Message without Attachments/Unread Delivery Report
- raitiy sent wessage without Attachments/officed Delivery Repo
- Rartly Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Confirming Delivery
- Rartly Sent Message without Attachments/Confirming Delivery
- Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/Delivery Failed
- Insent Message without Attachments/Delivery Failed
- Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/Waiting Delivery
- Unsent Message without Attachments/Waiting Delivery
- □ Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/Sending
- Unsent Message without Attachments/Sending
- Draft with Attachment(s)
- Draft without Attachments
- (2)S1 Mail/SMS
- S! Mail
- SMS
- SMS on the USIM card

③Priority/Protection

High/Protected

Normal/Protected

Low/Protected

High/Not Protected

Low/Not Protected

Setting Security for Message Box

You can require that your security code for operation (page 1-22) be entered in order to check the files in the Message Box.

Main Messaging

1 Select Message Box→¬ (Menu)→Security Lock
→ ■

2 Enter your security code (page 1-22)

3 Select *Lock|Unlock*→

Checking the Contents of the Message

Main menu Messaging

1 Select Message Box \rightarrow \bullet

2 Enter your security code (page 1-22)

3 Select a folder→ ■ → Select a message → ■

Changing the Message Box List Display Mode

Switching between Folder View and All Message View

Switch views of received and sent messages in the Message Box between Folder View and All Message View.

Main menu Messaging Message Box

Switching between Mixed View and Separate View

Switch views of received and sent messages in the Message Box between "Sent or Received" and "Sent and Received".

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow *Display* \rightarrow \bigcirc

2 Select Received/Sent→ → Mixed View|Separate View→ ■

Tip

You can also switch the Mixed View/Separate View by pressing
 (Mixed)/ (Each) in the Message Box.

Switching the Message List Display Mode

Main Messaging Message Box

- **1** Select a folder→
- **2** Press **y** (Menu)→*Display*→
- **3** Select Display Items→ ■→SubjectlAddresses→ ■

15

Tip

You can also switch the message list display mode by pressing

Operations While Viewing Messages

Copying Text

Main menu Messaging Message Box

- **1** Select a folder → Open a message
- 2 Press ☑ (Menu)→Text Copy→ ■
- Move the cursor to the first/last character of the text range→ → Specify a range of text to copy

Moving SMS Messages to Your USIM Card or Handset

Main Messaging Message Box

- **1** Select a folder → **•** → Open a message
- 2 Press ☑ (Menu)→Move→ →To Folder/To USIM → ■

Displaying Details of a Message

Main
Messaging

Message Box

1 Select a folder → • Open a message

2 Press \square (Menu) \rightarrow View \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow View Details \rightarrow \bigcirc

Managing Message Folders

Use folders to organize and manage messages saved in Message Box.

Main menu Messaging Message Box

Editing a Folder Name

Select a folder→☑ (Menu)→*Rename Folder*→ ■ →
Enter a folder name→ ■

Sorting Messages to the Specified Folders Automatically Select the user folder or Ku-man folder→ ☑ (Menu)→ Sort Setting→ ☑ → Select the sort criteria→ ☑ → Specify condition → ☑

- Select Person to set an individual entry in Phone Book as the sort condition.
- Select *Group* to set a group in Phone Book as the sort condition.
- Select Address to set the specified addresses that are not saved to Phone Book as the sort condition.
- Select *Phone Book* to set existence or non-existence in Phone Book as the sort condition.
- lacktriangle Select $\it Ku-man$ to set messages from Ku-man as the sort condition.

Auto-delete

Select a folder $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Auto-delete \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Received/Sent \rightarrow Set/Do not Set \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting Security for the Selected Folder

 You can set the handset so that it asks for the security code in order to view the messages in the selected folder. However, folder security cannot be set to General

Select a folder \rightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow $Security Lock <math>\rightarrow$ \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22) \rightarrow $Lock/Unlock <math>\rightarrow$ \bigcirc

Tip

 If Person, Group, Address or Ku-man is selected in Sort Setting, a message appears asking you to confirm that you want to sort the messages.

Note

- When Auto-delete is set to Do not Set and memory becomes full, you cannot send/receive a message. Delete the unnecessary messages (page 15-19).
- When Auto-delete is set to Set and memory becomes full, the oldest message is deleted when a new message is received or created. However, protected messages (page 15-18) will not be deleted.

15

If a received message meets more than one sorting criterion, the order of priority for sorting a message is Person → Group → Address → Phone Book

Replying to Messages

Quote sender's message when composing your reply.

 For S! Mail, a replying message has Re: automatically inserted into the front of the subject.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box ► Received

1 Select a folder→ → Open a message → (Reply)

Replying by Creating a New MessageSelect *Blank*→ ■

Replying by Quoting the Received Message

Select With Text→

Replying by Referring the Received Message Select $Refer \rightarrow \blacksquare$

To reply to the sender of a message with multiple addresses, select
 To Sender or To All.

Tip

- When you quote a received message decorated by Arrange settings and reply to the sender, an outgoing message that quotes the decorations is created.
- When you quote the text of a received message to compose a new message, the quoted text is not displayed if you decorate the message by Arrange settings.
- It's impossible to quote or refer to a received message in which Auto-delete is set and reply to the sender.

Forwarding Messages

 For S! Mail, a forwarding message has Fw: automatically inserted into the front of the subject.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box ► Received

Select a folder→ → Open a message→ ☑ (Menu)

2 Select *Divert*→

Hp

- When you forward a message with an attached file, the attached file is forwarded, too.
- When you forward a decorated message, the decorations will be forwarded, too.

Making a Call to the Sender of the Message

The call can be made when the sender's address is a phone number.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box ► Received

- **1** Select a folder→ → Open a message → ¬ (Menu)
- **2** Select Call Sender $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

Checking Delivery Report

Confirm the delivery status of messages by delivery report sent from the Server Mail Box when Delivery Check (page 15-23) is set to \boldsymbol{Ask} . View the delivery report from Information Prompt (page 1-10), too.

Main menu Messaging Message Box

- **1** Select *Sent*→Select a folder→
- 2 Select a message with the delivery confirmation icon (➡)→■

Linked Information

Make a call, send a message, or connect to a website from a linked phone number, email address, or URL within a received message.

■ The available linked information is displayed in blue characters.

Main menu Messaging Message Box

- Select a folder → → Select message including information
- **2** Select the information → •

Making a Call to the Selected Phone Number

Select *Voice Call*→ •

Making a Circle Talk Call to the Selected Phone Number

Select Voice Call → ■ → ▼ (Menu) → Circle Talk → ■ → ※ (Call)

Sending a Message to the Selected Phone Number/Email

AddressSelect *Create Mail* → □ → *Create* → □ → Create a message

Adding the Selected Phone Number/Email Address to Phone Book

Select Save Sender $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Add \ New | Add \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

 See "Adding a New Entry" (page 4-3) about the following operations.

Registering Selected Location Information to the My Locations

Select *To Locations*→

Connecting to the Selected URL

Select *Connect*→

Saving Attached Files

Save a file attached to received message in Data Folder.

- **1** Select a folder→ → Open a message that has an attached file
- **2** Select an attached file $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ $\rightarrow Save \rightarrow \bigcirc$
 - To display/play the attached file, select *View* or *Play*.
- Enter a file name→ → Phone Memory|Memory Card→ ■

Note

- Some files may not be saved depending on the file type.
- Some data may not be displayed/played properly on your handset.

Editing/Sending the Unsent Messages

Main Messaging Unsent Msg.

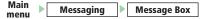
- **1** Select a message → → Select an item → ●
- **2** Edit the item→
- **3** Press \square (Send) $\rightarrow OK \rightarrow \square$

qiT

- The only type of message that you can edit is a message that you have failed to send.
- From the Unsent folder, press (Menu) to perform the following:
 Delete/Send Multi/Display/Call Address/Save Sender

Protecting/Unprotecting Messages

Protect messages against accidental deletion or Auto-delete (page 15-15).



Select *Received*|*Sent*→**Select** a **folder**→

Protecting/Unprotecting One Message

Select a message $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Menu) \rightarrow $Protect \rightarrow \boxdot \rightarrow One \rightarrow \boxdot \rightarrow Protect/Deactivate <math>\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Protecting/Unprotecting Multiple Messages

Press \searrow (Menu) \rightarrow Protect \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select Multi \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Protect/

Deactivate→ ■→Select messages→ ■→ 🗟 (OK)

Protecting/Unprotecting All Messages in the Folder

Press $\[\bigcirc \]$ (Menu) $\] \rightarrow Protect \rightarrow \[\bigcirc \] \rightarrow All \rightarrow \[\bigcirc \] \rightarrow Protect/Deactivate \rightarrow \[\bigcirc \]$ (twice)

Deleting Messages

Main menu Messaging Message Box

Deleting One Message

Select a folder \longrightarrow Select a message \longrightarrow (Menu) \rightarrow **Delete** \longrightarrow **One** \longrightarrow **YES** \longrightarrow \bigcirc

Deleting Multiple Messages

Select a folder \longrightarrow \longrightarrow \longrightarrow (Menu) \rightarrow **Delete** \longrightarrow \longrightarrow Select **Multi** \longrightarrow Select messages \longrightarrow \longrightarrow \longrightarrow (Delete) \longrightarrow **YES** \longrightarrow \longrightarrow

Deleting All Messages in a Folder

Select a folder $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ (Menu) \rightarrow **Delete** $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow **All in Folder** $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ Enter your security code (page 1-22) \rightarrow **YES** $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

Deleting All Messages in the Received/Sent Message Box

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow **Delete** \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow **A** $II \rightarrow$ \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22) \rightarrow **YES** \rightarrow \bigcirc

Tip

 If you delete an S! Mail notification, one the following is displayed (differs depending on what is deleted):

$Notification | Server\ Mail | Notif. | Server$

 If you delete multiple messages that include unread or protected mail, one the following is displayed (differs depending on what is deleted):
 Read Only/All/Unprotected Only

Received/Sent Messages Operations

Main menu Messaging Message Box

Changing the Order that Messages Appear

Select a folder \longrightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow $Sort by <math>\longrightarrow$ Select the sort criteria \longrightarrow \bigcirc

Displaying Messages According to the Specified Criteria

Select a folder \longrightarrow \longrightarrow \longrightarrow (Menu) \longrightarrow Filter \longrightarrow \longrightarrow Select the criteria \longrightarrow \bigcirc

$\label{eq:making a Call to the Sender/Receiver of a Message } \mathbf{Making \ a \ Call \ to \ the \ Sender/Receiver of a Message }$

Adding a New Phone Number/Email Address to Phone Book

Select a folder \longrightarrow Select a message \longrightarrow [Menu] \rightarrow Save Sender \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Add New \rightarrow \bigcirc Enter items \rightarrow \bigcirc (OK)

Adding a Phone Number/Email Address to a Phone Book Entry

Select a folder \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a message \rightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow Save Sender \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Add \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a Phone Book entry \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc (OK)

Switching between Unread and Read

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box ► Received

1 Select a folder→

Changing One Message

Changing Multiple Messages at Once

Press $\[\]$ (Menu) $\]$ $\[$ $\]$ $\]$ $\]$ $\[$ $\]$ $\]$ $\[$ $\[$ $\]$ $\[$ $\]$ $\[$ $\[$ $\[$ $\]$ $\[$ $\[$ $\[$ $\]$ $\[$ $\[$ $\[$ $\]$ $\[$ $\[$ $\[$ $\]$ $\[$ $\[$ $\[$ $\[$ $\]$ $\[$ $\[$ $\[$ $\[$ $\[$ $\[$ $\$

Changing All Messages in the Folder

Press $\[\]$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Unread/Read \rightarrow \[\]$ $\rightarrow All \rightarrow \[\]$ $\rightarrow To \ Unread/To \ Read \rightarrow \[\]$ $\rightarrow Change \rightarrow \[\]$

Moving Messages

Main menu Messaging Message Box

1 Select *Received|Sent*→Select a folder→

Moving One Message

Select a message \rightarrow \square (Menu) \rightarrow $Move Folder \rightarrow \square$ \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc Select a folder \rightarrow \square

Moving Multiple Messages at Once

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow Move Folder \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select Multi \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select messages \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc (Move) \rightarrow Select a folder \rightarrow \bigcirc

Moving All Messages in the Folder

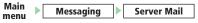
Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow *Move Folder* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow *All* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a folder \rightarrow \bigcirc

Server Mail Operations

Using the Mail List

If an incoming message meets any of the following criteria, the message is stored on the Server Mail Box temporarily.

- When the other party's handset is turned off or out of the service area
- When an S! Mail exceeds 284 characters (284 bytes)*
- When a file is attached*
- When multiple addresses are specified
- When the subject contains 41 or more single-byte characters
- When the sender's address contains 61 or more single-byte characters*
- * This applies when the Retrieve Mode setting (page 15-24) is **Phone # Only** or **Deferred**. Note that if you set **Phone # Only**, S! Mail addressed to the phone number is automatically received.



Retrieving and Updating the Mail List

Press
☐ (Update) → Update →
■

Retrieving Messages

Select a message $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ (Menu) \rightarrow Retrieve $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow One/Select

 $Multi/All \rightarrow \boxed{ }$

Retrieving Multiple Messages at Once

Press ☑ (Menu)→**Retrieve**→ ■ →**Select Multi**→ ■ →
Select messages→ ■ → (Get)

Tip

 Retrieved messages are deleted from the Mail List and saved to Received.

Forwarding Server Messages

Forward messages stored on the Server Mail Box to other handsets, PCs, etc.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Server Mail

- 1 Select a message→ [v] (Menu)→Divert→ •
- **2** Select $Keep|Do \ not \ Keep \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter \ a \ recipient$
 - When Do not Keep is selected, the forwarded message is deleted from the Server Mail Box.
 - For details on how to enter addresses, see page 15-5.
- **3** Press 🖀 (Divert)

Deleting Server Messages

Delete messages stored on the Server Mail Box.

Deleting One Message

Main menu ► Messaging ► Server Mail

Deleting a Message Stored on the Server Mail Box Select Server Mail → → YES → ■

Deleting an S! Mail Notification and Message Stored on the Server Mail Box

Select *Notif./Server* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow *YES* \rightarrow \bigcirc

Deleting Multiple Messages

Main menu ► Messaging ► Server Mail

1 Press \square (Menu) \rightarrow Delete $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow$ Select Multi $\rightarrow \square$

Deleting Multiple Messages Stored on the Server Mail Box Select $Server\ Mail$

Deleting Multiple S! Mail Notifications and Messages Stored on the Server Mail Box Select Notif./Server→ ■

- **2** Select messages→●
- **3** Press \square (Delete) $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Deleting All Messages

Main Messaging Server Mail

Deleting All Messages Stored on the Server Mail Box Select *Server Mail* → ■

Deleting All S! Mail Notifications and Messages Stored on the Server Mail Box

Select *Notif./Server*→

2 Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Checking the Server Mail Box Status

Check the usage rate of the Server Mail Box.

Main Messaging ► Server Mail

1 Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow *Mailbox Vol.* \rightarrow \bigcirc

lacktriangle To update the amount of Server Mail Box space, press $\ensuremath{\boxtimes}$ (Update).

Note

 If the Server Mail Box usage exceeds 80%, a warning window will appear. Retrieve messages stored on the Server Mail Box (page 15-20) or delete them (page 15-21).

Message Settings

Display Settings

Main menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► Display

Selecting a Message Font Size

Select *Font Size* \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select the font size \rightarrow \blacksquare

Select the Scroll Unit of the Message Display Window
Select Scrolling→ → Select the scroll unit→ →

Setting the Sender/Subject View for When You Receive a Message

Select *Show Address* → ■ → Enter your security code (page 1-22) → *Main Display/Ext. Display* → ■ → Select a viewing mode → ■

Creating Settings

Creating the Simple Input List

Main Messaging ► Settings ► Creating

1 Select Simple Input→ ■ → Select an unregistered list→ ■ → Enter a recipient

• For details on how to enter addresses, see page 15-5.

Setting Groups

Send a message to multiple addresses by using the Group list.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► Creating

Select *Category*→

Editing a Group Name

Select a group \rightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow Rename \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc Enter a group name \rightarrow \bigcirc

2 Select a group $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Add \rightarrow \boxdot \rightarrow$ Enter a recipient

• For details on how to enter addresses, see page 15-5.

Switching To/Cc/Bcc for an Address

Select a recipient $\rightarrow \boxed{w}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow To/Cc/Bcc \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$ $\rightarrow To/Cc/Bcc \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$

Saving/Inserting a Signature

Main menu Messaging Settings Creating

1 Select *Signature*→

2 Select Signature 1/Signature 2→ → Enter a signature → ●

Signature is saved and the feature is set.

Canceling Signature

Select *No Signature*→

Editing Signature

Select $Signature \ 1/Signature \ 2 \rightarrow \boxdot \ (Menu) \rightarrow Edit \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Edit$ signature $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the Default Mail Type

Set the type of an outgoing message (SMS/S! Mail) when you create a new message.

Main

Messaging

Settings

Creating

1 Select Default Type $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow SMS/S! Mail $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

Displaying/Hiding Notifications of Mail Type Change

If you changed the mail type when composing mail (pages 15-9, 15-11), you can specify whether a message notifying you of the change is displayed.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► Creating

Select *Notify* $Type \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Show/Hide \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Send Settings

Main menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► Sending

Setting the Transmission Confirmation Window

Select $Confirmation \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Show/Hide \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the Vibrator When Transmission is Confirmed Select $Vibration \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Checking Whether Sent Messages were Delivered to Recipients

Select $DeliveryCheck \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Ask/Do \ not \ Ask \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Setting the Length of Time a Sent Message is Stored on Server Mail Box

Select $Expiry\ Time \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow SMS/S!\ Mail \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select$ the expiry time $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

Setting the Message Priority Level

Select $Priority \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$ the priority $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Specifying a Time for Delivering Messages from the Service Center to Recipients

Select $Delivery\ Time \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select the delivery time $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Save a Reply Address

Select $Reply to \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$ Enter an address

• For details on how to enter addresses, see page 15-5.

Receive Settings

Retrieve Mode (S! Mail)

Set method for retrieving messages from the Server Mail Box.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► Receiving

1 Select *Retrieve Mode*→

2 Select Immediate|Phone # Only|Deferred→

■

Setting the Automatic Extraction of Attached Files

Set whether to automatically display/play picture and sound files attached to messages.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► Receiving

1 Select $Auto-extract \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the Automatic Display of Picture Files
Select Picture→ ■→Show/Hide→■
Setting the Automatic Display of Sound Files

Select $Sound \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Unmute/Mute \rightarrow \square$

Setting Spam Filter

Sort messages from telephone numbers or email addresses that are not saved in Phone Book to a specific folder.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► Receiving

1 Select *Anti Spam*→ ■ →Enter your security code (page 1-22)

Setting Sort

Select Sort Messages → ■ → Sort/Do not Sort → ■

Selecting the Folder to be Sorted

Select Select Folder → ■ → Select a folder → ■

Setting 3D Pictogram Display

3D Pictogram Display is a 3D animation display function compatible with words, pictographs and emoticons in text. Set the display conditions, background color and display speed.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► 3D Pict. Setting

Setting the Conditions for Displaying Received Messages with a 3D Pictogram Display

Select *Auto Play* \longrightarrow Select the condition \longrightarrow

Setting the Font and Background Colors for a 3D Pictogram Display

Select *Colors*→ Select a color →

Note

- 3D Pictogram Display cannot display SMS messages with no body text.
- Background playback of a music file may be paused if you use 3D Pictogram Display.

Tip

- You can display up to 150 characters regardless of whether the characters are single byte or double byte. "..." indicates after the maximum number of characters has been exceeded.
- You can use to change the display speed of 3D Pictogram Display while it is displayed/paused.

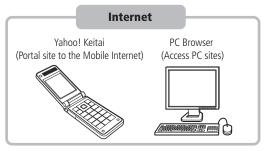
Getting Started	16-2
About Yahoo! Keitai and PC Website 1	6-2
Viewing Pages Stored in Cache Memory 1	6-2
SSL / TLS 1	6-3
Viewing and Using Websites	16-3
Accessing Yahoo! Keitai	16-4
Accessing PC Websites	16-5
Saved Pages	16-5
Saving Displayed Pages to Saved Pages 1	6-5
Displaying Saved Pages 1	6-6
Bookmarks	
	6-6
9	6-6
	6-6
Setting Browser Security	
Operations for Web Pages	
	6-8
Strice mig Bettreen randor rental and re trebsites	6-8
	6-8
9	6-9
	6-9
	6-9 5-11
	5-11 5-11
9	
Browser Settings Changing Font Size 16	16-12 5-12
	5-12 5-12
	5-12 5-13
	5-13 5-13
	5-13
	5-13
	5-13

Security Settings	16-14
Confirming the Root Certificates	16-15
Specifying the Destination to Save Downloaded Contents	16-15
Initializing Your Browser	16-16
Resetting Various Settings of the Browser	16-16
Live Monitor	16-16
Registering New Information to be Displayed	16-16
Resetting the Registered List	16-16

Getting Started

About Yahoo! Keitai and PC Website

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai (SoftBank's mobile portal site). Also browse the Internet using PC Browser. In this manual, the Internet is used as a general term and the mobile portal site is referred to as Yahoo! Keitai. Websites accessed using PC Browser is referred to as a PC Website.



■Using Yahoo! Keitai

- Browse Mobile Internet sites
- Download images, music, etc.
- Stream movie/music files
- Register to Live Monitor

■Using PC Browser

Browse Web pages designed for PCs

Viewing Pages Stored in Cache Memory

Cache Memory temporarily stores websites you have retrieved.

When cache memory becomes full, the oldest information saved in the cache will be deleted automatically.

- Previous viewed pages may load from Cache Memory. To view the latest data, update the information (page 16-8).
- For details on storage capacity, see "Storage Capacity" on page 21-16.

Tip

- You can delete information that is temporarily saved in the cache (page 16-13).
- Some information cannot be saved in the cache.
- Information saved in the cache is not deleted when you disconnect from the Internet or turn off your handset.

SSL / TLS

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) and TLS (Transport Layer Security) are a communication method for transmitting data in an encrypted form over the Internet. It enables data such as information related to privacy and credit card numbers to be sent and received safely and protects against dangers on the Internet such as eavesdropping, tampering and spoofing. SSL communication uses server certificates (page 16-11).

Caution about the Use of SSL/TLS

When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of SSL/TLS usage.

SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Cybertrust Japan, Entrust Japan, GlobalSign Japan, RSA Security Japan and SECOM Trust Systems cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

Viewing and Using Websites

Scrolling Pages

When the whole page is not displayed on the browser screen, the scroll bar appears on the right or bottom of the screen. View the remaining part using $\boxed{\begin{tabular}{c}}$ or \bigcirc to scroll the screen.

Moving Cursor

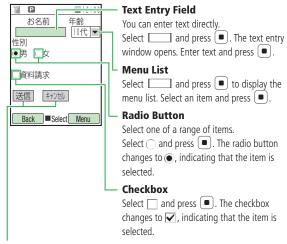
When there are items on the screen that can be selected, move the cursor to the next item by pressing \bigcirc and to the previous item by pressing \bigcirc .

Going to the Next Page/Returning to the Previous Page

Websites you have retrieved are temporarily stored. Press (Back) to return to the previous page. If you press (Menu) and select *Forward*, it takes you to the next page.

Text Entry & Item Selection

When there are entry fields and selectable items on the screen, operate as follows.



Command Button

Select operations such as sending or canceling what you put in the entry fields. Select _____ and press _ o to execute the indicated command.

Note

• One on the left is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

Accessing Yahoo! Keitai

Access Yahoo! Keitai to search for information. Also connect to a Website by entering an address (URL) like "http://www. \alpha.ne.jp" directly.

◆ The "♣" indicator appears during communication. To disconnect, press
 ☑ (Cancel).

Main Yahoo! Keitai

Accessing from the Yahoo! Web Menu

Select **Yahoo! Keitai**→

Accessing a Web Page by Directly Entering the Address

Select $Enter\ URL \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Direct\ Input \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter a URL $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ (twice)

Accessing a Web Page from URL History

Select $Enter\ URL \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow URL\ History \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select\ a\ URL$ history $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (twice)

Accessing a Web Page from Accessed Web Pages

In History, up to the 20 most recently accessed URLs are saved. You can select a URL from History and access the same website again.

Select *History*→ ■ → Select a history → ■

Tip

 For the 814T, you can also view the Yahoo! Keitai menu by Pressing and holding
 in Standby.

16

- Alternatively, you can press vi in Standby to access Yahoo! Keitai.
- While a URL history is selected, press (Menu) and select *Delete* to delete the URL history.

Accessing PC Websites

View websites designed for PCs with the PC Browser.

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

1 Select *PC Browser* \rightarrow

You can also access the PC Browser menu by pressing ([]).

Accessing the Home Page

Select *Homepage*→

Accessing Bookmarked Web Pages

Select Bookmarks (page 16-6) $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow$ Select a bookmark $\rightarrow \square$

Accessing a Web Page by Directly Entering the Address Select $Enter\ URL \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Direct\ Input \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter\ a\ URL \rightarrow \bigcirc$ (twice)

Accessing a Web Page from URL History

Select $Enter\ URL \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow URL\ History \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select\ a\ URL$ history $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (twice)

Accessing a Web Page from Accessed Web Pages Select *History*→ Select a history→

- **2** Select Always AsklAsk Once Only→
 - If you select Ask Once Only, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

Note

 Some websites may not be displayed correctly or it may take time to open the site depending on the site.

Saved Pages

If you save frequently accessed information to Saved Pages, the information can be called up without accessing the Internet later.

Saving Displayed Pages to Saved Pages

1 Display a page $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Saved\ Pages \rightarrow \blacksquare$

2 Select $Save \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter a title \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Note

- Some pages may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.
- If you save a page with the same URL as a page already saved in Saved Pages, it is saved as a different page.

Гір

 URLs and attached data which include linked information are saved in Saved Pages. 16

Displaying Saved Pages

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

1 Select Saved Pages → ■

Displaying Saved Pages of PC Websites
Select PC Browser → ■ → Saved Pages → ■

2 Select the title of the page→

Bookmarks

If you bookmark frequently accessed pages, you will be able to access them quickly and easily.

Adding a Bookmark

1 Display a page $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow \blacksquare$

2 Select Save→

● If you don't edit a title or URL, press 🖾 (OK).

3 Select the title field→ ■→Edit the title→ ■→

(OK)

Select a folder when adding to the folder.

Using Bookmarks

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

Select *Bookmarks*→

Using Bookmarks for PC Websites
Select PC Browser→ ■ →Bookmarks→ ■

2 Select the title of the page→

After communication with the Service Center, information is displayed.

Tip

You can call up information from Bookmarks while viewing a page.
 Display a page → ☑ (Menu) → Bookmarks → ■ → View List

Editing Bookmarks

Create folders to organize bookmarks, change bookmark titles or folder names, or delete them.

Creating a Folder

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

1 Select *Bookmarks* \rightarrow \bigcirc

Creating a Folder for a PC Website
Select PC Browser→ → Bookmarks→ ●

2 Press ∇ (Menu) \rightarrow Create Folder \rightarrow

3 Enter a folder name→

Editing a Bookmark Title

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

1 Select *Bookmarks*→

Editing a Bookmark Title of PC Website
Select PC Browser→ → Bookmarks→ ■

2 Select the title of the page→¬¬ (Menu)

3 Select $Edit \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a title \rightarrow \blacksquare$

4 Edit the title→ ● → 🖾 (OK)

■ To rename a folder, select a folder you want to rename from the Bookmarks list, press (Menu) and select *Rename Folder*.

Moving a Bookmark to Another Folder

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

1 Select *Bookmarks* \rightarrow **•**

Moving a Bookmark of a PC Website Select $PC\ Browser \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow \bigcirc$

2 Select a bookmark $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Move \rightarrow \bigcirc$

3 Select a folder $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Sending a URL in an SMS or S! Mail Message

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

Select $Bookmarks \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Sending the URL of a PC Website Select $PC\ Browser \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

2 Select the title of the page→¬¬ (Menu)→
Send URL|As Mail→
¬

Deleting Bookmarks

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

1 Select *Bookmarks* \rightarrow **•**

Deleting Bookmarks of PC Websites Select $PC\ Browser \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

2 Select a bookmark $\rightarrow \square$ (Menu) \rightarrow *Delete* $\rightarrow \square$

Deleting One Bookmark

Select $One \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Deleting All Bookmarks

Select $All \rightarrow \blacksquare$ \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22) $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Tip

Internet

Setting Browser Security

If you set browser security, your security code (page 1-22) needs to be entered to display Bookmarks, Saved Pages, Enter URL or History.

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

1 Select Bookmarks|Saved Pages|Enter URL|History→

¬¬ (Menu)

Setting Browser Security for PC Websites
Select PC Browser→ → Bookmarks/Saved Pages/Enter URL/
History→ □ (Menu)

2 Select Security Lock→ ■→Enter your security code (page 1-22)

3 Select *Lock|Unlock→* ■

Operations for Web Pages

Entering a URL Directly to Access a Website

While displaying pages, connect to a homepage by entering an address (URL) like "http://www.△△.co.jp" directly.

- **1** Display a page $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Enter\ URL \rightarrow \blacksquare$
 - To access a website from access history, select URL History (pages 16-4, 16-5).
- **2** Select $Direct Input \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Enter a URL \rightarrow \bullet$ (twice)

Switching between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Websites

- **1** Display a page $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ (Menu) \rightarrow Change $View \rightarrow \bullet$
- **2** Select Always AsklAsk Once Only→
 - If you select Ask Once Only, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

Updating the Information

Update the displayed page.

Display a page $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Reload\ Page \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Using Linked Information

Use linked phone numbers, email addresses or URLs to make calls, create messages or access websites. Also add phone numbers and email addresses to Phone Book.

- Available only when the phone number, email address or URL is underlined.
- **1** Display a page

Making a Call/Adding to Phone Book

Select a linked phone number→ → Call/To Phone Book→ ■
Sending Message/Adding to Phone Book

Select a linked email address → ■ → As Mail/To Phone Book → ■

Accessing a Website

Select a linked URL→

Copying Text from a Page

Copy text from a page to the clipboard.

- 1 Display a page $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Text Copy \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- 2 Move the cursor to the first/last character of the text range→ Specify a range of text to copy
 - Only characters and pictographs can be copied.

Useful Features While Viewing a Page

Searching for a Particular Character String on a Page

- **1** Display a page $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Tool \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- Select Search → → Enter text to search for → (twice)
- 3 Select the search method $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Up/Down$ or $ON/OFF \rightarrow \square \rightarrow \boxtimes$ (Search)

Jumping to the Top or End of Web Page

- Display a page $\rightarrow \boxed{}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Tool \rightarrow \boxed{}$
- **2** Select *To Top|To End*→

Sending URLs via SMS/S! Mail

Display the Create Message window with the URL pasted to the text.

Saving a Page to Event

Save a displayed page to events in the Calendar. A saved page is stored in Saved Pages.

Internet

16

- 2 Select *To Event*→ → Register the event (page 13-25)

Saving a Page to My Locations

When a page with location information is displayed, the information can be saved to My Locations.

- **2** Select *To Locations*→

Viewing Properties of the Web Page

Check a title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer or URL of the page.

- 1 Display a page $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Tool \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Details$
- **2** Select *Page Details*→

Displaying a Selected Frame in the Whole Screen

In a page that is designed for PCs and has multiple frames, a frame can be selected and maximize it to fit the whole screen.

1 Display a page→Select a frame

2 Press $\[\] \]$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Tool \rightarrow \[\] \rightarrow Frame In \rightarrow \[\] \]$ Returning to the All-Frames Screen Press $\[\] \]$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Tool \rightarrow \[\] \rightarrow Frame Out \rightarrow \[\] \]$

Operating Flash® Playback

- **1** Display a page $\rightarrow \mathbf{v}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Tool \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- 2 Select Flash(R) Menu→ → Play from Top|Play
 → ■
 Pausing Playback

Select $Stop \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Enlarging/Reducing a Page

- 1 Display a page of PC Website $\rightarrow \mathbb{P}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Tool \rightarrow Zoom \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **2** Select Magnification/Shrinkage Percentage→

Changing Display Mode

Switch Display view between reduced view and standard view.

- **1** Display a page of a PC Website→ [w] (Menu)
- **2** Select *PC Screen|Small Screen*→

Changing the Direction

You can switch the direction to be displayed on a PC Website between horizontal and vertical.

- **2** Select Landscape|Portrait→

 ■

Checking Server Certificates

While viewing a page that supports SSL/TLS connections, the applied certificate can be viewed.

- For details on SSL/TLS, see page 16-3.
- **1** Display a page which is protected by SSL/TLS→

 [v] (Menu)→Tool→ □ →Details→ □
- **2** Select Session Info.→

Using Files in Web Pages

Perform various operations such as saving and displaying/playing picture and melody files in Web pages.

Saving the File to Data Folder

- 1 Display a page that has a file→¬¬ (Menu)
- **2** Select *Saving Mode*→ → Select a file → ■

3 Select Save→ → Phone Memory|Memory Card → ■

Saving a Pictograph File to My Pictograms in Data Folder on the handset

Select *Save My Pict.*→

Note

• Some pages may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.

Viewing File Properties

- **1** Display a page that has a file→ [y] (Menu)
- **2** Select Saving Mode $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select a file $\rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **3** Select *File Details*→

Playing or Displaying the File Data

- Display a page that has a file→ਓ (Menu)
- **2** Select Saving Mode $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ Select a file $\rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **3** Select $Play/View \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Note

• Some files may not be displayed/played properly on your handset.

Downloading Files from Links

1 Open page

Playing or Displaying the File

Select a link $\rightarrow Play/View \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Saving the File to Data Folder

Select a link $\rightarrow \square \rightarrow Save \rightarrow \square$

Viewing File Properties

Select a link $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow File \ Details \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

Saving and Setting the File as a Wallpaper

Select a link $\rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \bigcirc$ (twice)

Saving and Setting the File as a Ringtone

Call/Circle Talk/Hot Status→ (twice)

Note

- Some pages may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.
- Some files may not be displayed/played properly on your handset.

Tip

- For details on streaming, see page 7-7.

Browser Settings

 To configure the PC Website Browser, select PC Browser and then Settings on Yahoo! Keitai.

Changing Font Size

Main Main Mahoo! Keitai Settings

Select Font Size $\rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow$ Select a font size $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Tip

Setting Scroll Unit

1 Select $Scrolling \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a scroll unit \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Tip

Changing the Text Encoding Type

When text is not correctly shown in the page, change the text encoding type to show them again.

- **1** Display a page $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- 2 Select $Encoding\ Type \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select\ the\ text$ encoding type $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Adjusting Sound Volume

- **1** Open a page→ [w] (Menu)→ Settings → [w] → Sound Volume → [w]
- **2** Adjust the sound volume→

Refusing the Reception of Images or Melodies (Text Browse)

Set your handset to receive only text information from the Internet which will shorten the amount of time to complete a transmission.

1 Select *Downloads*→

Refusing the Reception of Images
Select Images→ → Do not Download→ ■
Refusing the Reception of Melodies

Select $Sounds \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Do \ not \ Download \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

Tip

- Images and melodies refused are shown by the icons "
 and "
 and "
 ".

Setting a Warning Window When Changing Browsers

Set whether or not a warning window appears when you change between PC Browser and Yahoo! Keitai.

Main menu

Yahoo! Keitai

PC Browser

Settings

- **1** Select Warning→ → PC Browser|Yahoo! Keitai → ■
- **2** Select *ShowlHide*→

Memory Management

Deleting Cache Memory

Clear the temporarily saved information in Cache memory.

1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)→*Clear Cache*→ ● → *YES*→ ●

Deleting Cookies

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai Settings Memory Mgr.

1 Enter your security code (page 1-22) \rightarrow *Clear Cookie* $\rightarrow \bigvee$ \rightarrow *YES* $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

Clearing Authentication Info

Main menu

Yahoo! Keitai

Settings

Memory Mgr.

1 Enter your security code (page 1-22) \rightarrow Clear Auth... $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Security Settings

Manufacture Number Setting

Set whether to automatically send the International Mobile Equipment Identity (IMEI) of your handset as your User ID when a request is received from the network.

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai Settings Security

- **1** Select *Manufacture* #→ •
- **2** Select SendlDo not Send→

 ■

Referer Setting

Set whether or not to send referer information.



Select Send Referer $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow SendlDo not Send $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

Enabling/Disabling Cookies

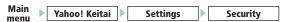
Cookies are the mechanism for temporarily saving the date you accessed the website, number of accesses and other information. The information is sent from the server, saved temporarily in your handset and used for contents service. If Cookie is set to *Enable*, the information such as the date you accessed the website and number of accesses is also sent to the site.

Main menu ► Yahoo! Keitai ► Settings ► Security

- **1** Select *Cookie*→
- **2** Select Enable|Disable|Always Ask→
 ■

Script Setting

Set whether or not your handset shows a confirmation window when showing a Web page with which script (program) has been set.



1 Select Script→ ■ → Ask OncelEnable|Disable| Always Ask→ ■

Confirming the Root Certificates

Confirm details on a certificate issued from a certificate authority.

• For details on SSL/TLS, see page 16-3.

Select Root Certif. → ■ → Select the root certificate → ■

Authentication Setting

Specify whether user name/password authentication information should be retained when authentication is performed on a website.

Setting SSL Communication

Set whether or not your handset shows a confirmation window when sending out encoded data by SSL communication.



Select Session Info. \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ShowlHide \rightarrow \bigcirc

Specifying the Destination to Save Downloaded Contents

Specify the destination to save contents such as music files when you download them from Web pages.



Select Storage→ → Phone Memory Memory Card
→ ■

Tip

Initializing Your Browser

Return data, such as browser setting, Bookmarks, Saved Pages, access history, authentication information, cookie and cache, to the default settings.

- **1** Select *Browser Reset*→ → Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select $YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Resetting Various Settings of the Browser

Return the browser's various settings to the default settings.

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai Settings

- 1 Select Reset Setting→ ■→Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select $YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Live Monitor

Confirm various pieces of the latest news delivered by information service providers and S! Loop (page 18-2) items in Active Window (pages 13-2, 13-4) by automatic updates recurring every period of time as you have specified.

Registering New Information to be Displayed

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor

- **1** Select List/S! Loop List \rightarrow \blacksquare
- **2** Select Contents List/S! Loop $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **3** Select contents→
 - Follow the onscreen instructions to register contents.

Note

 Live Monitor flash news and S! Loop list are not automatically updated from late at night until early in the morning.

Tip

Update/Delete

 The items registered in S! Loop will be shown in the S! Loop list. For details, see the S! Loop Help.

Resetting the Registered List

Delete all registered Live Monitor lists and S! Loop list.

Main Main Yahoo! Keitai Live Monitor Settings

- Select Clear List→ → Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select $YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Getting Started	17-2
Downloading S! Appli	17-3
Starting S! Appli	17-3
Suspending/Resuming/Ending S! Appli	17-3
S! Appli Library	17-4
Deleting S! Appli	17-4
Switching the S! Appli Library Display	17-4
Viewing S! Appli Properties	17-4
Moving S! Appli	17-5
Security Settings	17-5
S! Appli Settings	17-6
Setting the Screensaver	17-6
Setting Priority While Running an S! Appli	17-6
S! Appli Volume	17-7
Backlight Settings	17-7
S! Appli Vibration	17-7
Updating the Information of an S! Appli on	the
Memory Card	17-7
Confirming the License Information of an S	! Appli17-8
Confirming the Route Certificate of an S! A	ppli17-8

Getting Started

Download an S! Appli from Web pages providing S! Appli on the Internet. Downloading uses the same amount of communication charges as when you use the Internet.

- For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).
- You can download and use only S! Appli that are specially designed for SoftBank handsets.

About S! Appli

■Downloading S! Appli (page 17-3)

S! Appli such as games and 3D images downloaded from the Internet will be stored in the S! Appli Library.

■Network S! Appli (right)

You can enjoy games and acquire the information in real time by connecting to the network.

■ Setting Screensaver (page 17-6)

Set an S! Appli as a Screensaver.

About Network S! Appli

There are S! Appli which operate only on the handset at the time of use, and S! Appli (Network S! Appli) which need to connect to the network (Internet). Enjoy games and acquire the information in real time by connecting to the network for Network S! Appli.

- When you use a Network S! Appli, a communication fee is charged each time the application connects to a network.
- When you use a network-type S! Appli, and *Blanket* is already specified for *Access* in the Security settings (page 17-5), you are automatically connected to the network without a first confirmation screen.

Downloading S! Appli

Main s! Appli Library

- 1 Select More S! Appli \rightarrow YES \rightarrow Select an S! Appli \rightarrow Download \rightarrow \bigcirc
- **2** Select *Phone Memory*|*Memory Card*→

Downloading begins.

 A confirmation window is displayed when the download is completed.

Note

- If the battery level is low, the application may not be completely downloaded.
- If you replace the USIM card, downloaded applications will no longer be available.

Tip

- If the memory of the destination to save the file is full or if the number of items to save is exceeded:
 - If the destination is your handset, a confirmation window is displayed. Select YES and then delete unnecessary data.
 - If the destination is a memory card, you cannot download S! Appli.
 Delete unnecessary files of S! Appli (page 17-4) or save them on the handset.

Starting S! Appli

Main menu ► S! Appli ► Library

1 Select an S! Appli→ ■

Tip

 Operations when there is a call or message coming in while you are running S! Appli, it will follow the priority settings for incoming calls and messages (page 17-6).

Suspending/Resuming/Ending S! Appli

Suspending/Resuming/Ending

While an S! Appli is running, press 🚎

2 Select PauselResumelEnd→

■

Tip

 Some S! Applis are paused when you close the handset. With some S! Applis, a charge may still apply even while the handset closed.

Resuming/Ending S! Appli Suspended

1 Select *ResumelExit*→ •

Note

• If you pause and then restart an S! Appli set as the Screensaver, or if an S! Appli automatically restarts after a voice call, video call or Circle Talk call, a tone sounds to notify you that the S! Appli is restarting and a message is displayed. Because the earpiece and speaker on this device are located in close proximity, there is a risk that a loud noise may be emitted directly from the speaker into the user's ear when audio is played back. Loud noise inflicted on the ear can impair your hearing. When using this device, take care to hold it slightly away from your ear.

S! Appli Library

Deleting S! Appli

Deleting One Application

Deleting Multiple Applications

Press $\boxed{}$ (Menu) \rightarrow **Delete** \rightarrow $\boxed{}$ \rightarrow **Select Multi** \rightarrow $\boxed{}$ \rightarrow Select applications \rightarrow $\boxed{}$ $\boxed{}$ (Delete) \rightarrow **YES** \rightarrow $\boxed{}$

Deleting All Applications

Press \boxdot (Menu) \rightarrow **Delete** \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow All \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22) \rightarrow **YES** \rightarrow \blacksquare

Note

 If you delete a preinstalled S! Appli, Reset All (page 12-8) will not restore the deleted application.

Tip

 There are some cases when an S! Appli cannot be deleted. This depends on the type of the preinstalled S! Appli.

Switching the S! Appli Library Display

Change the S! Appli Library display from the handset (Data Folder) library to the memory card library. The " . indicator appears while the memory card library is displayed.

1 Press 🖫 (互)

■ To change from the memory card to the handset, press ② ().

Viewing S! Appli Properties

Main S! Appli Library

Select an S! Appli $\rightarrow \boxed{}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Details \rightarrow \boxed{}$

Tip

 You can confirm such specific data as names, vendors, and versions of applications in properties. The items to be confirmed vary according to the S! Appli.

Moving S! Appli

Move an S! Appli to the S! Appli Library on the handset (Data Folder) or to the S! Appli Library on the memory card.

Main menu ► S! Appli ► Library

Moving One Application

Select an application $\rightarrow v$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Move \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow One \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bullet$

Moving Multiple Applications

Moving All Applications

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow *Move* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow *All* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22) \rightarrow *YES* \rightarrow \bigcirc

Note

- Standby settings will be canceled if the S! Appli set as Screensaver is moved to the memory card.
- There are some cases when an S! Appli cannot be moved anywhere
 according to the type of the preinstalled S! Appli. There are also some
 cases when an S! Appli cannot be moved to the memory card according
 to the type of the downloaded S! Appli.
- If there is the same S! Appli on the handset or on the memory card, the S! Appli will be overwritten.

Security Settings

Set your handset to alert you before making calls or network connection, etc., while an S! Appli is running.

Main
S! Appli
Library

- Select an S! Appli $\rightarrow \boxed{}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Security \rightarrow \boxed{}$
- **2** Select an item→

Permit All Functions and Do Not Display Alert Select *Blanket*→ ■

Display Alert Each Time You Access a Function Select *Oneshot*→

■

Display Alert Each Time an S! Appli is Activated Select **Session**→●

Do Not Execute Any Function and Do Not Display Alert Select $No
ightharpoonup \blacksquare$

Tip

• The type of display methods varies according to the function.

S! Appli

S! Appli Settings

Setting the Screensaver

Set an S! Appli for Standby. Also set the starting time of the S! Appli set as the Screensaver.

Main menu S! Appli Settings

1 Select Screensaver→ ■

Setting an S! Appli as Screensaver

Select $Screensavers \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$ an application $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the S! Appli Start Time

Press [m] (Menu) \rightarrow Start Time \rightarrow [m] \rightarrow Enter a start time \rightarrow [m]

Note

- Even if there is an incoming call, Answering Machine (page 13-18) will
 not start operating when an S! Appli is set as the Screensaver or when
 the Voice Call of Calls&Alarms (right) is set as Continue Apps.
- According to the type of application, there are some cases when a Screensaver application may pause if the time specified for power saving (page 11-10) is over.
- If an S! Appli set as the Screensaver is running, Twinkle Light (page 11-11) only operates during calls.

Tip

- If you press when an S! Appli is set as the Screensaver, the S! Appli set as the Screensaver will pause, but its Standby setting will not be canceled. If you want to cancel the S! Appli set as the Screensaver, select OFF at Screensaver.
- You can also set the Standby settings if you select an S! Appli available as Screensaver in the S! Appli Library (page 17-4).

Setting Priority While Running an S! Appli

Set whether to pause the S! Appli to put a priority on an incoming call or to have a notification only without interrupting the S! Appli, when you receive a call, etc. while operating the S! Appli.

Main S! Appli Settings

1 Select Calls&Alarms→

Setting the Priority for When There is an Incoming Voice Call Select $Voice\ Call \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Pause\ Apps/Continue\ Apps \rightarrow \blacksquare$ Setting the Priority for When There is an Incoming Video Call Select $Video\ Call \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Pause\ Apps/Continue\ Apps \rightarrow \blacksquare$ Setting the Priority for When There is an Incoming Message

Select Message
ightharpoonup
ightharpoonup
ightharpoonup Pause Apps/Continue Apps
ightharpoonup
ightharpoonup Select <math>Alarm
ightharpoonup
ightharpoonup Pause Apps/Continue Apps
ightharpoonup
ightharpoonup

S! Appli Volume

Main menu S! Appli Settings

1 Select *Volume*→

2 Adjust the volume→

Tip

 If you have set the manner mode as Original Mode (page 11-2), the sound volume will follow the S! Appli volume set at the Original Mode.

Backlight Settings

Main
S! Appli
Settings

1 Select *Backlight*→

Setting the Backlight to Display

Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Always \ ON/Always \ OFF/Same \ as \ Phone \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

Setting the Backlight to Blink

Select $Blink \rightarrow \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Tip

 If you select Same as Phone, your handset will follow the backlight settings (page 11-10).

S! Appli Vibration

Main s! Appli Settings

1 Select *Vibration*→

2 Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Updating the Information of an S! Appli on the Memory Card

You need to update the information of S! Appli on the memory card after you have used it (editing, adding, or deleting data) on other SoftBank handsets or PCs.

Main menu ► S! Appli

1 Select $Card Sync \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Tip

 There are some cases when it takes a certain amount of time to complete updates according to the numbers and sizes of the S! Appli.

Confirming the License Information of an S! Appli

Main menu S! Appli

1 Select *Information*→

Confirming the Route Certificate of an S! Appli

Main menu S! Appli

1 Select *Certification* → Select the certification →

S! Appli

S! Town (Japanese Only)	18-2
Using S! Town	18-2
Using the Library	18-2
S! Loop (Japanese Only)	18-2
Hot Status	
About Hot Status Notifications	18-3
Creating a Hot Status Members List	18-4
Editing Your Hot Status Information	18-7
Editing Hot Status Members List	18-8
Checking Members' Hot Status Information	18-9
Hot Status Settings	18-10
Circle Talk Basics	18-12
Making a Circle Talk Call	18-13
Making a Circle Talk Call	
Answering a Circle Talk Call	18-14
Answering a Circle Talk Call Circle Talk Operations	18-14
Answering a Circle Talk Call	18-14 18-14
Answering a Circle Talk Call	18-14 18-14 18-14
Answering a Circle Talk Call	18-14 18-14 18-14 18-14 18-14
Answering a Circle Talk Call	18-14 18-14 18-14 18-14 18-14
Answering a Circle Talk Call	
Answering a Circle Talk Call Circle Talk Operations Contacting Another Member Adjusting the Earpiece Volume Switching Sound Output Circle Talk Members List Creating a Circle Talk Members List	

S! Town (Japanese Only)

S! Town is an online communication application. S! Town is a 3D virtual space. Enjoy the S! Town virtual space e.g. when chatting or shopping.

- S! Appli for S! Town is required to use S! Town. S! Appli S! Town is preinstalled in the handset.
- You can delete the S! Town S! Appli. To use this S! Appli again, perform S! Town startup, download the application and then be sure to save it on the handset. If you download S! Town again, the first time you launch it there will be an initial data download of approximately 2 MB as a packet transmission, so the application may take 10 or more minutes to launch. Note that if the S! Town application will not launch when it is on a memory card. Transfer S! Town from the memory card to the handset and then launch the application.
- Packet transmission fees apply to use S! Town. The fees may be expensive.
- If you subscribe to Website access restrictions, you cannot use S! Town.

Using S! Town

When you use S! Town for the first time, a user registration (free) and profile registration are required. Please read and agree to the terms of service before the registration.

See S! Appli S! Town Help for details about using S! Town.

Main Communications

Select S! $Town \rightarrow \blacksquare$

- You can view the S! Town registration status and cancel the service from Yahoo! Keitai. See S! Appli S! Town Help for details.
- Upgrade notification may appear when you start S! Town. Follow the onscreen instructions to upgrade S! Town.

Using the Library

The library stores S! Appli that expand the functions of S! Town. Downloaded S! Appli are automatically stored in the library.

S! Appli are not preinstalled in the library.

Main Communications menu

- Select $S! Town \rightarrow \square$ (Libr.)
 - You can start S! Appli from the library. Depending on the types of S! Appli, S! Appli S! Town may start.

S! Loop (Japanese Only)

Use S! Loop to keep a diary on the web or exchange information via BBS.

Main Communications

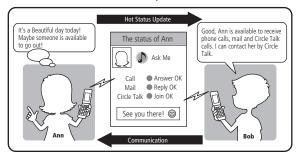
- Select S! $Loop \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$
 - S! Loop top menu appears.
 - See S! Loop Help for operations.

Hot Status

Share your current mood and availability to receive incoming calls, messages or Circle Talk calls with your Hot Status members.

It is necessary to obtain the person's consent before saving him/her to Hot Status Members List.

If you save your Hot Status members to the Members List of Active Window, their Hot Status information can be easily checked from Active Window.



Note

• If IP Service (page 12-7) is set to *OFF*, Hot Status is unavailable.

Tip

 Hot Status information is updated automatically. You can also update it manually (page 18-11).

Subscription

 To use Hot Status, subscription is required and a monthly subscription fee is applied.

About Hot Status Notifications

When a Hot Status notification arrives, the ring tone sounds and a message appears.

There are five types of Hot Status notifications as shown below.

Туре	Description
Saving Completed	Your invitation has been accepted. Once an invitation is accepted, the accepted parties can view each other's Hot Status information.
Saving Failed	Your invitation was either rejected, the other party did not reply within 24 hours or his/her Members List already contained 30 people.
Deletion Request	The other party has deleted you from his/her Hot Status Members List. After receiving this notification, you and the person can no longer check each other's Hot Status information.
Saving Request	The other party has added you to his/her Hot Status Members List. After you accept the invitation, you and the person can check each other's Hot Status information. When you receive a Saving Request, "@" appears in Standby. The Saving Request is shown with "@" in the Hot Status Notification List.

Туре	Description
Notification	The network connection failed and Hot Status has automatically become <i>Offline</i> .

Checking Hot Status Notifications

Hot Status notifications can be checked in the Hot Status Notification List.

1 When Information Prompt appears, select Notification → Select the Hot Status notification

 Select YES to display the Hot Status Members List after checking Saving Completed or Deletion Request notifications.

Tip

- Hot Status notifications are deleted from the Hot Status Notification List after you operate them.
- A message is displayed if you receive a Hot Status notification while operating in certain Hot Status windows. Select *Check Now* to display the Hot Status Notification List. To continue the current operation, select *Check Later*.
- Press (Menu) while the Hot Status Notification List is displayed to perform the following:

Delete/Delete All

Creating a Hot Status Members List

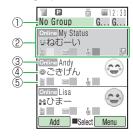
Save up to 30 people to your Hot Status Members List. Organize and manage entries by group. Save up to ten people per group or 30 people to $\it No$ $\it Group$.

Note

- You can only save people with Hot Status-enabled SoftBank handsets to the Hot Status Members List.
- To create a Hot Status Members List, set My Status to Online (page 18-8).

Hot Status Members List Window

The members saved to each group are shown in a list.



①Group tab

Switches the group to be displayed.

②My Status

Information about you. Always displayed on the top regardless of which group is displayed.

3Hot Status connection status

Shows the current network connection status of the member.

4 Condition

Shows the current feelings and condition of the member.

⑤Availability

Indicates member status and availability by color.

■ Calls

Green: Available Yellow: Available for Emergencies
Red: Unavailable White: Unknown

■ Mail

Green: Available Yellow: Will Check Later
Red: Unavailable White: Unknown

Circle Talk

Green: Available/Auto Join Red: Unavailable

Tip

 Press (Menu) while the Hot Status Members List is displayed to perform the following (some items are not displayed depending on the selected member):

Add Members/Call/Call CT/To Phone Book/Settings/Active Window/Notification/Rename/Change Group/Delete

Saving Entries to Hot Status Members List

When you add a person to your Hot Status Members List, an invitation is sent.

 When the person accepts your invitation, a Saving Completed notification arrives (page 18-3) and that person is saved to Hot Status Members List where you can check the person's status.



- **1** Press \square (Add) \rightarrow Phone Book|Direct Input \rightarrow \blacksquare
 - If you select *Phone Book*, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM card or memory card).
- **2** Select a person or enter a phone number→

To Select a Group

Select
→ Select a group →

18

3 Press $(Save) \rightarrow YES \rightarrow (\bullet)$

A Saving Request notification is sent to the person, and *Waiting* is displayed in the Hot Status Members List.

Note

 A Saving Failed notification is sent when a person's Hot Status Members List already contains 30 people.

Tip

- If My Status is Offline, a message asking you to go Online is displayed when you start up Hot Status. Select YES to change to Online.
- If you have not saved any members when you start up Hot Status, a
 message asking you if you want to add members is displayed. Select
 YES to add a new member.
- After you have selected a member, press [w] (Menu) and select Change to select a different member.

Saving an Entry to Hot Status Members List from a Saving Request

If you get an invitation to join a person's Hot Status Members List, you will receive a Saving Request notification (page 18-3). If you accept, the other person is saved to the Hot Status Members List and you and the person can check out each other's Hot Status information.

1 When Information Prompt appears, select *Notification*→ •

2 Select the Saving Request notification $\rightarrow \bigcirc YES$

- →[
- If you select NO, a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person and the person is not saved to the Hot Status Members List.

Note

- If you select NO and a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person, you cannot send the person an invitation to the Hot Status Members List for 24 hours
- Although you select NO and a Saving Failed notification is returned to
 the other person, if the other person does not receive the notification
 because he/she is outside the service area or offline for more than
 24 hours, you will receive another Saving Request notification when the
 person comes online.

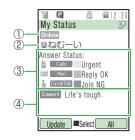
Tic

 You can set your handset to reject Saving Requests from people that are not saved in Phone Book or you can set it to reject all Saving Requests (page 18-10).

Editing Your Hot Status Information

Open My Status window to edit your current mood or switch between online and offline.

My Status Window



1) Hot Status connection status

Set the connection to your network.

2Mood

Set your current feelings and condition.

3 Answer status

Set your reception conditions for each of the various transmission methods.

4 Comment

Enter a message to show to the other members.

Changing My Status

Change your Hot Status information (My Status).



1 Select My Status→ ■

● In Standby, press and hold 🛣 to display My Status.

To Change Your Mood

Select the mood \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow \bigcirc

To Change Your Answer Status

Select the answer status to be changed → ■ → Select an item → ■

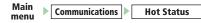
To Change All Your Answer Statuses

Press [m] (All) \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow [m] \rightarrow Confirm the settings \rightarrow [m]

2 Press **(Update)**

Entering Comments

Enter a message to display as Hot Status information.



Select My Status→■

● In Standby, press and hold 📲 to display My Status.

- 2 Select the Comment field→
- 3 Enter a comment → 🕥 (Update)

Switching between Online and Offline

If you switch to offline, you and other people cannot check each others' current condition. Also, you will not be able to create Hot Status Members List or talk to people with Circle Talk.

Main menu ► Communications ► Hot Status

- **1** Select My Status→
 - In Standby, press and hold 🛣 to display My Status.
- 2 Select Online / Offline → ■

To Switch to Online

Select $Online \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

To Switch to Offline

Select *Offline*→ ■ → 🖾 (Update)

Editing Hot Status Members List

Editing a Group Name

1 Select a group with •• → • (Menu) → Rename

2 Edit a group name→

Tip

• You cannot change the name of No Group.

Changing a Group

Hot Status members can be moved to different groups.

Main menu Communications Hot Status

Select a group with 🕞

To Change One Member

Select a member $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Menu) \rightarrow *Change Group* \rightarrow *One* \rightarrow Select a group \rightarrow

To Select Multiple Members to Change

Select an entry other than My Status $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ (Menu) \rightarrow Change Group $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow Select Multi $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow Select some members $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow

To Change All Members

Select an entry other than My Status $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ (Menu) \rightarrow *Change Group* $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow *All* $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow Select a group $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

diT

 If you move multiple or all members to a group so that the group exceeds ten members, the group will not be changed and the screen returns to the multiple members selection window. Reselect the members so that the group does not exceed ten members.

Deleting a Member

When you delete a member from your Hot Status Members List, a Deletion Request notification is sent to that person.

1 Use •• to select a group

To Delete One Member

To Select Multiple Members to Delete

Select an entry other than My Status $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Menu) \rightarrow Delete $\rightarrow \boxdot$ \rightarrow Select Multi $\rightarrow \boxdot$ \rightarrow Select some members $\rightarrow \boxdot$ (Delete) \rightarrow YES $\rightarrow \boxdot$

To Delete All Members

Select an entry other than My Status $\rightarrow \boxtimes$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow All \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22) <math>\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Note

 After a member is deleted from the Hot Status Members List, you cannot send/receive a Saving Request notification to/from that person for 24 hours

Checking Members' Hot Status Information

In the Member Status window, check the current condition of members and call them, send them messages or talk to them with Circle Talk.

Member Status Window



①Member information

Shows the name and image saved to Phone Book, Hot Status group and phone number. $\,$

②Hot Status connection status

Shows the current network connection status of the member.

③Mood

Shows the current feelings and condition of the member.

(4) Answer status

Shows the reception conditions for various transmission methods in color.

⑤Comment

Shows a message from the member.

Main menu Communications Hot Status

1 Select a group with •• → Select a member with •• → ••

2 Contact the member according to their current status

To Make a Call

To Send a Message

Select the answer status for Mail \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Create a message \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc (Send)

To Make a Circle Talk Call

Select the answer status for Circle Talk→

Tip

- When signal reception is poor, the latest Hot Status information may not be displayed. In this case, update the information manually (page 18-11).
- For a Hot Status member saved with a phone number, press [27] (Menu) in the Member Status window, select *Edit* and add the member to the Phone Book. The name and photo saved to Phone Book are displayed in the Hot Status Members List window and in the Member Status window.
- If you perform Reset All or Clear Memory (page 12-8), the names and images of members will no longer be displayed and they will all belong to No Group.
- Press
 (Menu) while the Member Status window is displayed to perform the following:

Edit/Change Group

Saving Entries to the Active Window Members List

Save members whose condition you often check to the Active Window Members List (page 13-2).

Main menu Communications Hot Status

- Select a group with ••• → Select a member with 💠
- **2** Press ☑ (Menu)→Active Window→ (twice)→
 Not Registered→ ■

Tip

You can also display My Status in Active Window.

Hot Status Settings

Setting How to Respond to Saving Requests

You can set in advance how to respond when you receive Saving Request

The response types are shown below.

Response type	Description
Always Answer	All Saving Requests are accepted.
Known Only	Only Saving Requests from people saved in Phone Book are accepted. A Saving Failed notification is sent to Saving Requests from people that are not saved in Phone Book.
Do not Answer	A Saving Failed notification is sent to all Saving Requests.

Main

menu

Select an item→ (Change)

Communications

To Set an Icon

Select $Icon \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select an icon \rightarrow \blacksquare$

To Set a Label

Select $Label \rightarrow \blacksquare$ $\rightarrow Enter a label \rightarrow \blacksquare$

To Set All Answer Statuses

Select $Set All \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select$ an item $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

• If you select *Customize*, the user settings you changed with [\sigma] (All) in the My Status window (page 18-7) are applied.

Hot Status

Press $[\nabla]$ (Menu) \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow $[\bullet]$ \rightarrow Status Setting

Press \square (Save) $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Updating Hot Status Information Manually

Hot Status Information is updated automatically, but you can also update it manually.

Main Communications **Hot Status** menu

Press \square (Menu) \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \square \rightarrow Status Update \rightarrow

Main Communications **Hot Status** menu

Press $[\nabla]$ (Menu) \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Request Reply \rightarrow

Select a response type→[•]

Editing Your Mood and Setting All Answer Statuses

Edit the mood to be displayed in My Status. Also, your answer statuses can be set all at once.

The following items are set when you purchase your handset.

⊚ ごきげん	⊚ ハッピー	ひまー
(Good mood)	(Happy)	(Free)
ぁそぼー (Let's have fun)	かばつ (Oh no!)	がっくり (Disappointed)
⊛ うえーん	。	めらめら
(Weeping)	(Upset)	(Flaming)
たる―い	aむーい	連絡して
(Lazy)	(Sleepy)	(Contact me)
♪ 誘って (Ask me)	₩ ひみつ (Secret)	

Communications

Circle Talk Basics

Circle Talk is a walkie-talkie style communication service. Talk one-on-one or with a group of people (up to ten people) using Circle Talk compatible SoftBank handsets. Press and hold (a) to talk (one person at a time) and release the key when finished talking. Check the Circle Talk session window to check each participant's status and see who is currently talking.

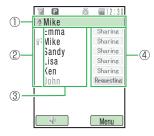
Note

- If IP Service (page 12-7) is set to *OFF*, Circle Talk is unavailable.
- When Hot Status connection status (page 18-7) is Offline, Circle Talk is unavailable. Switch to Online to use Circle Talk (page 18-8).
- Circle Talk is unavailable during voice or video calls. Also, you cannot receive another Circle Talk call during a Circle Talk session.

Subscription

To use Circle Talk, you must subscribe to Hot Status (page 18-3).
 Connection fees apply for using Circle Talk.

Circle Talk Session Window



1) Person with floor control

- 2 % indicates the person with floor control.
- ③ Session members

If the member is saved to Phone Book, his/her name appears. Members not saved to Phone Book are identified by their phone number.

4 Check each member's status.

Requesting Requesting participation

Join In Connected

Sharing Participating

Leaving Quit

Not Available Unavailable

Making a Circle Talk Call

1 In Standby, enter a phone number and press and hold ©

Circle Talk connection is made

● To make a Circle Talk call from the Circle Talk Members List (page 18-15), display the Circle Talk Members List, select an individual or group from the list and then press (CT).

Displaying the Circle Talk Members List

Main Menu \rightarrow *Communications* \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow *Circle Talk* \rightarrow \bigcirc

2 Press and hold **a** to talk

Talk when **Myself** appears.

- Initiator can talk as soon as Circle Talk is connected.
- ** Myself disappears after 30 seconds and the floor is released.
- Only one person can talk at a time.

To leave the Circle Talk session, press $\xrightarrow{post} YES$

When only one person remains the session ends

• When only one person remains, the session ends automatically.

Note

When the handset is open, the other party's voice is played at level 3 volume, even when the speaker volume (page 11-5) is set to *Level 4* or *Level 5*. You can change the volume during calls (page 18-14).

Tip

 Press (Menu) from the Circle Talk Members List to perform the following (available functions vary by list):

Add Members/Edit Group/Delete/Loud Speaker

- To add or delete members to whom you are making a Circle Talk call at the same time, perform the following (put check mark(s) to select up to ten members):

 - Select a member from the Circle Talk Members List \rightarrow \bigcirc (twice) \rightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow Add \rightarrow \bigcirc
 - Select a group from the Circle Talk Members List →

 →

 (Menu)

 → Add/Delete →

 □
- Alternatively, initiate a Circle Talk call from:
 - · Call Log
 - · Phone Book
 - · Active Window
 - · Hot Status Members List
- You can make a Circle Talk call from the latest record of dialed Circle Talk call log (page 2-8) to rejoin the Circle Talk session which is still active. If the session has ended, a confirmation window appears asking you whether to initiate another Circle Talk call.

18

Answering a Circle Talk Call

1 Press (Answer) when Circle Talk invitation arrives

Circle Talk connection is made.

- To reject the connection, press 🗹 (Reject).
- If the handset is closed, you can answer by pressing •.
- **2** Press and hold •

Talk when **Myself** appears.

- Only one person can talk at a time.
- To leave the Circle Talk session, press $\xrightarrow{pos} YES$
 - When only one person remains, the session ends automatically.

Tip

- If your answer status for Circle Talk is set to Auto Join (page 18-7), you are automatically connected when you receive a Circle Talk call.
- You can make a Circle Talk call from the latest record of received Circle Talk call log (page 2-9) to rejoin the Circle Talk session which is still active. If the session has ended, a confirmation window appears asking you whether to initiate another Circle Talk call.

Circle Talk Operations

Contacting Another Member

1 During a Circle Talk session, press $\boxed{}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Add$

To Contact a Person from a Circle Talk Members ListSelect *Members List* → Select a Members List entry → •

To Contact a Person from the Hot Status Members List Select *Hot Status* → Select a person → ■

To Contact a Person from Phone Book

Select $Phone Book \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a person \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Select a phone number \rightarrow \blacksquare$

To Enter a Phone Number Directly

Select $Direct Input \rightarrow \blacksquare$ \rightarrow Enter a phone number $\rightarrow \blacksquare$

Adjusting the Earpiece Volume

1 Use 🚺 during a session

Tip

• This adjusts the speaker volume when output is set for speaker.

Switching Sound Output

1 Press 🗟 (🌓 / 🔌) during a session

Tip

Circle Talk Members List

Creating a Circle Talk Members List

Save members to the Circle Talk Members List to initiate a Circle Talk call to a group of people.

Save up to 50 entries to Circle Talk Members List. Save people from Phone Book, Hot Status Members List or enter their phone number directly.

Creating an Entry

Main menu Communications Circle Talk

- 1 Press \mathbf{y} (Menu) $\rightarrow Add Members \rightarrow \bullet$
 - If not even one member is saved to the Circle Talk Members List, press (Add) to display the Add Members window.
- 2 Select Personal→ → Phone Book|Hot Status|
 Direct Input→
 - If you select Phone Book, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM card or memory card).
- **3** Select a member or enter a phone number→

Creating a Group

Organize entries by Group to initiate a Circle Talk call to a group of people. Save up to ten members to a group.

Main menu Communications Circle Talk

- **1** Press [x] (Menu) $\rightarrow Add$ Members $\rightarrow \bullet$
 - If not even one member is saved to the Circle Talk Members List, press ② (Add) to display the Add Members window.
- **2** Select $Group \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Create New \rightarrow \bullet$
- **3** Select *Empty*→ → *Phone Book|Hot Status|Direct Input*→
 - If you select *Phone Book*, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM card or memory card).
- **4** Select a member or enter a phone number→
 - To save more members, repeat Steps 3 and 4.
 - If you want to change a member's phone number, select the member, press
 twice, and then enter the phone number.
- **5** Press **(Add)**→Enter a group name

Tip

 Press (Menu) in the Create New Group window to perform the following (some items are not displayed depending on the selected member):

Delete/Delete All

18

Adding a Hot Status Members List Group

Add an entire group from the Hot Status Members List (page 18-5) as a Circle Talk Members List group.

Main Communications Circle Talk

1 Press \mathbf{Y} (Menu) $\rightarrow Add$ Members \rightarrow \blacksquare

 If not even one member is saved to the Circle Talk Members List, press (Add) to display the Add Members window.

2 Select $Group \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Hot Status \rightarrow \bigcirc$

3 Select a group→•

Tip

 Hot Status members in No Group cannot be added using this procedure.

Editing a Group Name

Main

Communications

Circle Talk

2 Select Edit Group $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ $\rightarrow Rename \rightarrow \blacksquare$

3 Edit a group name→•

Editing Group Member Information

Add or delete group members, or change a group member's phone number.

Main Menu Communications Circle Talk

Select a Circle Talk Members List group→

[v] (Menu)

2 Select *Edit Group*→ ● → *Change Member*→ ●

To Add Members

Select *Empty*→ ■→*Phone Book/Hot Status/Direct Input*→
■→Select a member or enter a phone number→
■
To Delete a Member

To Delete All Members

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow **Delete All** \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22) \rightarrow **YES** \rightarrow \bigcirc

To Change a Member's Phone Number

Select a member whose phone number you want to change→

(twice)→Enter a phone number→

□

3 Press (Save)

Deleting Entries from Circle Talk Members List

Main menu Communications Circle Talk

To Delete One Entry

Select an entry \rightarrow \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow $Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow $One \rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow $YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

To Select Multiple Entries to Delete

 $Press \ \underline{\ } \ (\mathsf{Menu}) \rightarrow \underline{Delete} \rightarrow \boxed{ } \ \rightarrow \underline{Select} \ \underline{Multi} \rightarrow \boxed{ } \ \rightarrow \underline{Select} \ some \\ entries \rightarrow \boxed{ } \ \rightarrow \underline{ } \ \bigcirc \ (\mathsf{Delete}) \rightarrow \underline{YES} \rightarrow \boxed{ } \ \bigcirc$

To Delete All Entries

Press \bigcirc (Menu) \rightarrow **Delete** \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow **All** \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-22) \rightarrow **YES** \rightarrow \bigcirc

S! Cast (Japanese Only)	19-2
Subscribing/Canceling Subscription	19-2
Checking Content Updates	19-2
Downloading Content Manually	19-3
Checking History	19-3
Weather Indicator	19-4
Reading Electronic Books (Japanese Only)	19-5
Reading Electronic Books (Japanese Only) Ku-man's Room (Japanese Only)	
Ku-man's Room (Japanese Only)	19-5
Ku-man's Room (Japanese Only) About Ku-man's Room	19-5 19-5

S! Cast (Japanese Only)

Subscribe to contents and receive automatic updates. Content updates are received during the night. When updates are received, Information Prompt (page 1-10) appears and the following indicators appear:

- Downloading content
- New S! Cast content
- Mark Download failed
- A monthly subscription fee is required to use this service. No additional fees are required for receiving content.

Subscribing/Canceling Subscription

Connect your handset to a special site to register or cancel transmission information and select programs.

Communication fees apply while you are connected to the Web.

Main menu Entertainment S! Cast

1 Select $Reg./Cancel \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Follow the onscreen instructions.

Checking Content Updates

Confirm the latest information.

The What's new? icon shown on the menu display of S! Cast will be "\(\mathbb{P}\)" when it has not been read; "\(\mathbb{P}\)" when it has been read.

Main Entertainment S! Cast

Select What's new? \rightarrow

aiT

- While What's new? is selected, press (Menu) and select Delete to delete the latest information.
- Lower portion of window may be blank, depending on the content.

Checking Content from Information Prompt

The latest information can be browsed from Information Prompt (page 1-10).

1 When Information Prompt appears, select *New S! Cast*→ ■

Tip

Downloading Content Manually

When an update cannot be received because your handset is turned off or the signal is weak, manually download the update. Only updates for that day can be downloaded.

Main menu Entertainment S! Cast

1 Select $Get\ Latest \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

A connection is established to the redelivery page.

Note

Content cannot be downloaded on non-delivery days.

Requesting Redelivery from Information Prompt

Establish a connection to the re-delivery page from Information Prompt (page 1-10).

- **1** When Information Prompt appears, select *S! Cast Info*→
- **2** Select $YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Checking History

Past updates are saved to History.

The icon History shown on the menu display of S! Cast will be " \Re " when there is some information that has not been read; " \Re " when all has been read.

Up to seven items are saved to History. The oldest item is deleted automatically.

Main menu ► Entertainment ► S! Cast

1 Select *History*→

2 Select a content→

Tip

- Up to 3 MB of content including the latest item can be saved. When
 either the maximum number of content items or the maximum content
 size is reached, the oldest item is deleted each time there is a new item.
- You cannot reorganize the list.

Weather Indicator

Weather Indicator shows the weather forecast in the current area with indicators in Active Window (page 13-2). Weather Indicator is updated automatically.

A separate subscription is required to use Weather Indicator.

Setting Weather Indicator

Main menu ► Entertainment ► S! Cast

1 Select Weather $Icon \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow View \ Setting \rightarrow \blacksquare$

2 Select Display $Icon \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Show \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Setting Information Prompt for Weather Indicator

Set to display Weather Indicator from Information Prompt (page 1-10).

Main menu Entertainment S! Cast

2 Select $Show \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Tip

• Use the Weather Indicator only as a guide.

Checking Weather Forecast

Main menu Entertainment S! Cast

1 Select Weather $Icon \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Weather \rightarrow \blacksquare$

When there is an unread forecast update, " " appears.

Tip

 You can view the weather forecast by selecting Weather Indicator and pressing in Active Window.

Updating Weather Forecast

Obtain the latest information manually when a Weather Indicator cannot be updated automatically.

Main menu Entertainment S! Cast

1 Select Weather $Icon \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Update \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Reading Electronic Books (Japanese Only)

BookSurfing is a viewer application that you can use to look at electronic comics, electronic photo albums and other electronic books (novels, etc.). You can enlarge or reduce images, scroll the window with simple operations, and use sound, vibration, and other effects to enhance your reading experience.

Some electronic books may require a content key for viewing.

Viewer	Supported Formats	
BookSurfing	CCF (.CCF)	

^{*} Titles of unsupported file formats are not displayed.

Main menu

Entertainment



BookSurfing→ ■



Tip

- Electronic books can be viewed by directly selecting a title from the Books folder. The appropriate viewer will start up in accordance with the file format of the electronic book selected.
- Alternatively, select the *BookSurfing* S! Appli first from which you can browse electronic books. Note, however, that selecting the *BookSurfing* S! Appli will allow you to browse only electronic books of a format that is supported by the browser you selected.

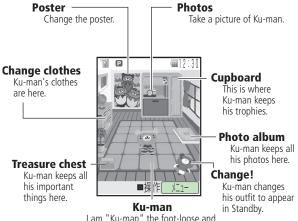
Ku-man's Room (Japanese Only)

"Ku-man" is a foot-loose and fancy free baby star bear. Visit Ku-man's room to change his outfit or receive messages from him.

Note

 You cannot visit Ku-man's room if the language setting is set to English. Set the language to 日本語 (Japanese).





fancy free star bear. Sometimes I like to travel around.

© Dora communications

Tip

 Check Ku-man's secrets at the website Toshiba User Club Site (right).

Opening Ku-man's Room

Main menu **■** エンタテイメント (Entertainment)

1 Select *くーまんの部屋* (Ku-man's Room)→ **■**

- When the confirmation window asking whether to open the room appears, select 起動する (Open).
- When the Idle Screen (page 11-9) setting confirmation window appears, select YES or NO.

Tip

Press the
 \(\sim \subseteq \subs

模様がえ (Redecorate): Redecorate Ku-man's room. Select the room from お部屋データ (Room Data) in Ku-man Data.

<一まんメール (Ku-man Mail): Check messages from Ku-man (page 19-8).

<一まんデータ (Ku-man Data): Display or delete files from Ku-man Data or attach files to messages.

マイデータ登録 (My Info.): Set your name and Ku-man will remember it. Also set your birthday or anniversaries and Ku-man will celebrate with you.

UserClubSite: Download items for playing with Ku-man from the website Toshiba User Club Site. For information about connecting, see the Toshiba User Club Site guide.

ヘルプ (Help): Find out about the operations in Ku-man's room.

メモリ容量確認 (Memory Status): Check the amount of memory used in Ku-man Data

<一まんOFF (Ku-man OFF): Turn off the Ku-man functions (Ku-man Mail, Idle Screen, Ku-man's Room).

 You can only download items for playing with Ku-man when UserClubSite (above) is selected.

Tip

- If Ku-man items become full, select the photos in the album that you
 want to keep, press ☑ (メニュー (Menu)) and copy them to Data
 Folder or to the memory card before erasing the items from Ku-man
 Data.
- Ku-man sometimes goes off on journeys. You cannot meet him while he
 is on a trip, but he can send you mail. He will come back after a while,
 so visit his room from time to time to see if he is home.

Playing with Ku-man

Look in Ku-man's Treasure Chest, change the outfit of Ku-man in Standby (page 11-9) or take photos.

Example: Changing the outfit of Ku-man in Standby

- 1 In Ku-man's Room, press Now you can operate Ku-man's Room.
- **2** Press 図 (前へ (Previous))/☑ (次へ (Next)) to select へんし〜ん! (Change!)→■
- **3** Select an outfit→
 - Ku-man in his room wears the clothes from before the change.

Tip

- If you select たからばこ (Treasure Chest), you can see Ku-man's treasures. Select a treasure, and press ☑ (メニュー (Menu)) and select メール送信 (Send Mail) to attach the treasure to a message. The treasure disappears from the Treasure Chest when it is attached to a message.
- Select きかえ (Change Clothes) to change Ku-man's clothes. Ku-man has different clothes for day wear and evening wear, so he only wears new clothes for that part of the day (day or evening).
 For example, if Ku-man changes to clothes B during the day, then he can only wear clothes B during the day. For the evening he changes to clothes C. Then, if he changes from clothes C to clothes D during the night, the next day he wears clothes B during the day and clothes D for the evening.

Example	Day	Night
Clothes on a day	Wears clothes A	Wears clothes C
Change to clothes B while wearing clothes A during the day.	Wears clothes B	Wears clothes C
Then, change to clothes D while wearing clothes C during the night.	Wears clothes B	Wears clothes D
On the next day	Wears clothes B	Wears clothes D

Ku-man also changes clothes for the different seasons.

Checking Messages from Ku-man

Ku-man sends mail after you open his room for the first time, when he goes on trips and other times. Sometimes there are presents attached to messages from Ku-man.

- **1** In Ku-man's Room, press ☑ (メニュー (Menu))→ *<ーまんメール* (Ku-man Mail)→ ■
- **2** Select a message→•

Tip

- To stop Ku-man from sending you mail, press
 (メニュー (Menu))
 and select < 一まんのFF (Ku-man OFF) in Ku-man's Room.
- Check, save and delete messages from Ku-man in the same way as in the Message Box (page 15-12).
- Ku-man Mail uses the same memory as Received (page 15-12) in Message Box. If you delete all the received messages, or if you set the Auto-delete (page 15-15) setting to its time of purchase setting *Set* and the folder becomes full, messages from Ku-man are also deleted.
- You can save the attached data to Data Folder or to Ku-man Data.
- Ku-man Mail is mock mail that does not go through the service center.
 No communication charge is applied.
- You can also check Ku-man Mail as follows:
 Main menu → Messaging → Message Box → Received

About S! FeliCa	20-2
Before Using S! FeliCa	20-2
Precautions When Using S! FeliCa	20-2
Using S! FeliCa	20-3
S! FeliCa Flow	20-3
Using S! FeliCa	20-4
Adding a Lifestyle-Appli	20-4
Checking IC Card Information	20-4
Disabling S! FeliCa	20-5
Turning IC Card Lock On or Off	20-5
Disabling S! FeliCa from a Remote Location	20-5
Disabling S! FeliCa from a Remote Location Setting the Lock Phone Number	20-5 20-5
Setting the Lock Phone Number	20-5
Setting the Lock Phone Number Setting the Lock Password	20-5 20-6
Setting the Lock Phone Number Setting the Lock Password Turning Mail Lock or Call Lock On or Off	20-5 20-6 20-6
Setting the Lock Phone Number Setting the Lock Password Turning Mail Lock or Call Lock On or Off Using Remote Lock to Lock the IC Card	20-5 20-6 20-6 20-7 20-8
Setting the Lock Phone Number Setting the Lock Password Turning Mail Lock or Call Lock On or Off Using Remote Lock to Lock the IC Card Configuring the External Startup Setting	20-5 20-6 20-6 20-7 20-8
Setting the Lock Phone Number Setting the Lock Password Turning Mail Lock or Call Lock On or Off Using Remote Lock to Lock the IC Card Configuring the External Startup Setting Setting the Display Balance	20-5 20-6 20-6 20-7 20-8
Setting the Lock Phone Number Setting the Lock Password Turning Mail Lock or Call Lock On or Off Using Remote Lock to Lock the IC Card Configuring the External Startup Setting Setting the Display Balance Setting/Canceling Display Balance	20-5 20-6 20-6 20-7 20-8 20-8

About S! FeliCa

S! FeliCa is a service used by cell phones with contactless IC card technology built in. The mark on the back of the handset can be held up to a reader/writer for such tasks as shopping with e-money, using a member's card or a point card. S! FeliCa can be used even while the handset is turned off. Note, however, that S! FeliCa cannot be used while the battery pack is removed.

Before Using S! FeliCa

FeliCa

FeliCa is contactless IC card technology that makes it possible to read data when an IC card is held up to a reader/writer.

■IC card

The term "IC card" means an IC chip built in an S! FeliCa compatible terminal.

■Lifestyle-Appli

This is an S! Appli for using S! FeliCa.

- Your handset comes with a preinstalled e-money Lifestyle-Appli called "Edy".
 - "*Edy*" is the brand name of a prepaid e-money service managed by bitWallet, Inc.

Precautions When Using S! FeliCa

- The data on the IC card can be misused if your S! FeliCa compatible handset is lost or stolen. Note that SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any losses suffered by you if this happens.
- Before deciding whether to use an S! FeliCa service, be sure to contact the service provider about the terms, conditions, and other rules governing its use.
- Connection charges may be incurred when downloading a Lifestyle-Appli or when using a Lifestyle-Appli that requires network connection.
- Do not remove the stickers from the back of the battery cover or from the handset in the area around the battery pack, and do not remove the battery cover. Doing so may make it impossible to use S! FeliCa.
 * For the 815T, the Bottom Panel is the battery cover.
- Certain types of service and usage conditions may cause data to be stored on the IC card. The procedure for deleting such data from the IC card depends on the Lifestyle-Appli. For details, contact the S! FeliCa service provider.

Using S! FeliCa

In order to use a Lifestyle-Appli, you first need to subscribe to an S! FeliCa service and configure a number of settings. Before using e-money, you need to make a deposit into your account.

S! FeliCa Flow

Downloading a Lifestyle-Appli

Main

■ Data Folder

■ Lifestyle-Appli
■ Download

Download the Lifestyle-Appli from an Internet website

• The Lifestyle-Appli is stored in the Lifestyle-Appli folder.

Subscribing to an S! FeliCa Service and Configuring Settings

Main Lifestyle Lifestyle

Select the Lifestyle-Appli you want to subscribe to or configure→ □

- Subscribe to the S! FeliCa service (hereinafter referred to as "service") and configure the required settings.
- Subscription and setting details depend on the Lifestyle-Appli.
 Follow the onscreen instructions

Using an S! FeliCa Service

Note

- Details concerning Lifestyle-Appli applications and usage differ according to the Lifestyle-Appli. For details, contact the S! FeliCa service provider.
- Note that SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any loss or corruption of data or settings on the IC card due to malfunction or repair.
- Be sure to keep separate records of the security code, contact information, and other information for each service so you do not forget them.

Tip

· You cannot activate more than one Lifestyle-Appli at the same time.

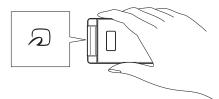
Using S! FeliCa

The e-money example below shows how to use a reader/writer to read IC card data.

- Before performing this procedure, you must subscribe to a service, configure its settings, and make a deposit in your e-money account.
- There is no need to activate Lifestyle-Appli to perform this procedure.
- S! FeliCa can be used even while the handset is turned off. Note, however, that a Lifestyle-Appli will not activate while the handset is turned off.

1 Hold the \square mark up to the reader/writer

 Whenever there is difficulty being read, try moving the handset back and forth, left and right.



2 Check the reader/writer display to confirm that the read was performed

Note

- Data may not be read if there is a metal object or other obstruction between the mark and the reader/writer.
- S! FeliCa cannot be used when battery power is low. Charge the battery pack to use S! FeliCa.

Adding a Lifestyle-Appli

In addition to the Lifestyle-Appli preinstalled in the handset, you also can download other Lifestyle-Appli from the Internet.

 Before using a downloaded Lifestyle-Appli, you first need to subscribe to an SI FeliCa service.

Note

- Downloading may not end normally if battery level is low.
- A downloaded Lifestyle-Appli cannot be used if you replace the USIM card.

Checking IC Card Information

Main Lifestyle Card Settings

- **1** Select *IC Card Status*→
 - You cannot check the contents of an IC card that is locked (page 20-5).

Disabling S! FeliCa

Your handset can be set to disable communication between the IC card and a reader/writer. "% " appears in Standby while the IC card is locked.

Turning IC Card Lock On or Off

Main menu ► Lifestyle ► Card Settings ► IC Card Lock

- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select $ONIOFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Disabling S! FeliCa from a Remote Location

Disable S! FeliCa from a remote location by placing a call to the handset from another phone (Call Lock) or by sending an email message with a preset subject to the handset (Mail Lock).

Setting the Lock Phone Number

Register a phone number for performing Call Lock. You can have up to eight lock phone numbers registered at the same time.

Main menu ► Lifestyle ► Card Settings ► Remote Lock

- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select $Call Lock \rightarrow \bullet$ $\rightarrow Phone Numbers \rightarrow \bullet$
- **3** Press $\boxed{}$ (Menu) $\rightarrow Add \rightarrow \boxed{}$

Setting a Phone Number from Phone Book

Select **Phone Book** $\rightarrow \square$ \rightarrow Select the party $\rightarrow \square$ \rightarrow Select the phone number $\rightarrow \square$ (twice)

Directly Entering a Phone Number

Select **Phone Number** \rightarrow Enter the phone number \rightarrow (twice)

Setting a Phone Number from the Call Log

Select $Call Log \rightarrow \blacksquare$ \rightarrow Select the party $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ (twice)

Specifying an Incoming Call from a Public Phone

Select **Payphone**→[■]

Specifying an Incoming Call with No Caller ID Select Withheld→

■

Tip

 Press
 (Menu) while a set lock phone number is selected to perform the following:

Add/Edit/Delete

Setting the Number of Calls for Locking

Specify the number of incoming calls for locking the IC card.

- Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select $Call\ Lock \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Missed\ Count \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- **3** Input the number of calls→

Setting the Lock Password

Register a password (subject) for performing Mail Lock.

Main menu ► Lifestyle ► Card Settings ► Remote Lock

1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)

2 Select Mail Lock $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow Lock PW $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

3 Input the lock password→

■

Setting a Lock Notification Address

Set an IC Card Lock notification address. You can have up to two lock notification addresses registered at the same time.

1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)

2 Select *Mail Lock*→ ● → *Address* → ●

3 Press $[] (Menu) \rightarrow Add \rightarrow []$

Setting the Mail Lock Address

Select *To Sender*→

Setting an Address from Phone Book

Select *Phone Book*→ ■ → Select the party → ■ → Select the email address → ■

Setting an Address from the Sent Log or Received Log

Select **Sent Log/Received Log** \rightarrow Select the party \rightarrow

Directly Inputting a Phone Number or Email Address

Select *Phone Number/Email* → Input the phone number/email address → (twice)

4 Press 207/se

Tip

 Press (Menu) while a set lock notification address is selected to perform the following:
 Add/Edit/Delete

Turning Mail Lock or Call Lock On or Off

Note that you cannot set to **ON** unless **Lock PW** (left) or **Phone Numbers** (page 20-5) is set.

Main menu ► Lifestyle ► Card Settings ► Remote Lock

Enter your security code (page 1-22)

2 Select Mail LocklCall Lock→

■

3 Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Using Remote Lock to Lock the IC Card

Lock the IC card from a remote location.

 Before performing these procedures, first configure Mail Lock (page 20-6) or Call Lock (page 20-6) settings and set Remote Lock to ON.

Using Mail Lock to Lock the IC Card

- 1 Create a message with a preset password for the subject, and send the message
 - Do not enter anything for any of the other fields of the message.
 IC Card Lock will turn on when the message is received.
 If there is a lock notification address (page 20-6) specified, a message will be sent to the address informing the recipient that IC Card Lock was turned on

Note

 If the handset is unable to receive mail for some reason, IC Card Lock will not be turned on even if you send a Mail Lock message.

Releasing Remote Lock

Set IC Card Lock (page 20-5) to *OFF* to release Remote Lock.

Using Call Lock to Lock the IC Card

- 1 Place a call to the handset from one of the preset phone numbers
- **2** Hang up the phone
 - Repeat the procedure until you reach the number of times you preset for Call Lock settings (page 20-5) within three minutes. Each of the calls must be unanswered.

Note

- The current incoming call count is cleared (becomes zero) whenever any one of the following occurs.
 - · If a call is received from another preset phone number
 - · If a call placed to the handset is answered
 - · If the handset is turned off
 - If the number of incoming calls does not reach the preset number within three minutes
- If Call Lock is performed while a video call is in progress, IC Card Lock will turn on but there will be no message to tell that the IC card has been locked.
- Call Lock cannot be performed while a voice call is in progress and Call Waiting (page 14-6) is set to OFF.

Tip

• When the number of calls reached to the preset number, a message informing that the IC card has been locked plays.

Configuring the External Startup Setting

Specify whether a function (browser, messaging, vibration, notification, S! Appli) should start up upon request from an obtained data when the handset is held up before a particular reader/writer.



- **1** Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- **2** Select a function→
- **3** Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Setting the Display Balance

You can view the current balance of your account charged to the IC Card. A Balance List displayed for each Lifestyle-Appli registered in the Balance List.

Setting/Canceling Display Balance

- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- 2 Select $ON/OFF \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \blacksquare$

Adding Applications to the Balance List

Main

Lifestyle

Card Settings

Display Balance

- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- Select Balance List→Select the location for the addition→
- **3** Select a Lifestyle-Appli→

Tip

- You can register up to 8 applications in the Balance List.
- You can also use the procedure below to add items to the Balance List.
 Main menu→Lifestyle→Lifestyle→[¬r] (Menu)→Add to List

Viewing Your Balance

- 1 With the handset closed, Press and hold a
 - Balances are displayed for each Lifestyle-Appli registered in the Balance List. You can switch to the balance display for another Lifestyle-Applis by briefly pressing .

Tip

 To view your Balance, you must first select Balance in the Side Key settings (page 11-13).

Removing Applications from the Balance List

Main menu ► Lifestyle ► Card Settings ► Display Balance

- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-22)
- 2 Select Balance List→Select a Lifestyle-Appli

To deleting one application

Y (menu) $\rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

To deleting all the applications

 $(menu) \rightarrow Delete \ All \rightarrow (menu) \rightarrow Telete \ All \rightarrow (men$

Default Settings	21-2
Troubleshooting	
Updating Software	21-12
Updating Software	21-12
Pictograph List	21-14
Arrange-picture List	21-15
Melody List	21-16
Storage Capacity	21-16
Specifications	
Glossary	
Index	
User Action Index	21-20
Alphanumerical Index	21-25
Warranty & After Sales Service	21-35
Warranty	21-35
After Sales Service	21-35
Customer Service	21-36

Default Settings

Appendix

Fun	ction Name	Default Setting	Page
S! Appli	Settings	Screensaver: Unset, Start Time: 3 sec, Calls&Alarms (Voice Call: Pause Apps, Video Call: Pause Apps, Message: Continue Apps, Alarm: Pause Apps), Volume: Level 3, Backlight (Backlight: Same as Phone, Blink: ON), Vibration: ON	Chapter 17
Active Window	Settings	Templates: News, Auto Update (Flash News: Manual, News: Manual, S! Loop: Manual), Idle Screen (Idle Display: Show, Image Setting: Show), Unread/Read: Show All, Screen Speed: Neutral	Page 13-5
Browser Se	ettings	Font Size: Medium-Small (Yahoo! Keitai)/Extra-Small (PC Browser), Scrolling: 1 line, Downloads (Images: Download, Sounds: Download), Security (Manufacture #: Do not Send, Send, Referer: Send, Cookie: Enable, Script: Ask Once (Yahoo! Keitai)/Enable (PC Browser), Authentica: Per Session, Session Info.: Show), Storage: Phone Memory	Page 16-12
Camera	Camera	Picture Size (Mobile: W240×H320, Digital: W1600×H1200), Date Stamp: OFF, Date Stamp Color: White w/Black, Quality: Fine, Effects: OFF, Shutter Sound: Pattern 1, Flicker: Automatic, Key Shortcut: ON, Storage: Phone Memory, Icons Display: Show, File Name: Date&Time, Auto Save: OFF, Mode: Mobile, Self-view: OFF, Multi Shots: OFF, Add Frame: OFF, Delay Timer: OFF, Mobile Light: OFF, Night: OFF, White Balance: Auto, Color Control: Neutral, Exposure:±0.0EV, Brush Up: OFF (Digital)/ON (Mobile), Grid: OFF	Chapter 6
	Video	Quality: (Video: Normal, Video Mail: Normal, Short Video: Economy (Fixed)), Effects: OFF, Start/End: Pattern 1, ScreenDisplay: Normal screen, Icons Display: Show, Preview: ON, File Name: Date&Time, Storage: Phone Memory, Flicker: Automatic, Key Shortcut: ON, Mode: Video Mail, Self-view: OFF, Voice Record: ON, Delay Timer: OFF, Mobile Light: OFF, White Balance: Auto, Color Control: Neutral, Exposure: ±0.0EV, Encode: MPEG4	
	Scan Data	Exposure: ±0.0EV	Page 6-14

Funct	ion Name	Default Setting	Page
	Display	Font Size: Medium-Small, Scrolling: Line, Show Address: Show All	
	Creating	Simple Input: No Entry, Category: No Entry, Signature: No Signature, Default Type: SMS, Notify Type: Show	Page 15-22
	Sending	Confirmation: Show, Vibration: ON, DeliveryCheck: Do not Ask, Expiry Time: Maximum, Priority: Normal, Delivery Time: Immediate, Reply to: OFF	Page 15-23
Messaging	Receiving	Retrieve Mode: Immediate, Auto-extract (Picture: Show, Sound: Mute), Anti Spam (Sort Messages: Do not Sort, Select Folder: Folder 18)	Page 15-24
	3D Pict. Setting	Auto Play: OFF, Colors: Color 1	
	Received	Auto-delete: Set	Do a o 1 F 1 F
	Sent	Auto-delete: Set	Page 15-15
Entertainment	Weather Icon	View Setting (Display Icon: Show, Information: Show)	Page 19-4
	Ku-man's Room	Ku-man Data: Thumbnail View, My Info. (Name: あのね、, Birthday: 01月01日, Anniversary: だいじな日, 01月01日)	Page 19-6

Fu	nction Name	Default Setting	Page
	Alarms	Alarms: OFF, Alarm Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Image: Original, Repeat: Once, Snooze: OFF	Page 13-16
	Answer Phone	Setting: OFF, Set Duration: 18 sec	Page 13-18
	Notepad	_	Page 13-19
	Calculator	Set Tax Rate: 5%	Page 12 20
	Dictionary	_	Page 13-20
	Calendar	All View: Not Registered, Alarm (Set Alarm: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Image: Original), Calendar Lock: Unlock, First View: Monthly, Font Color: White w/Black	Page 13-21
Tools	Tasks	All View: Not Completed, Alarm (Set Alarm: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Image: Original), Tasks Lock: Unlock	Page 13-30
	Time Table	Time Table: No Entry, Set Time: Unset	Page 13-33
	Kitchen Timer	10 sec	D 12 25
	Voice Recorder	Select Storage: Phone Memory	Page 13-35
	Number Memo	_	Page 13-36
	World Clock	_	Page 13-37
	Edit Picture	_	Page 6-22
	Transfer All	_	Page 13-39
	Relocate	_	Page 13-42
	Update	_	Page 21-12

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Lifestyle (Card Settings)		IC Card Lock: OFF, Remote Lock (Mail Lock: OFF, Lock PW: No Entry, Notification: Send, Address: To Sender, Call Lock: OFF, Missed Count: 3 times, Phone Numbers: No Entry), Interface: ON (Browser)/ON (Messaging)/ON (Vibration)/ON (Notification)/ON (S! Appli), Display Balance: OFF, Balance List: Not Registered	Chapter 20
Data Folder		View Type: Thumbnail 3×3	Chapter 9
Media Playe	er	Play Mode: All, Surround: OFF, Equalizer: Flat, Player Image: Original, Voice Cancel: OFF	Chapter 7
Phone Book		My Details: Owner phone number only, Select Storage: Phone Memory, Phone Book Lock: Unlock, Search Mode: List View, S! Addr. Book (Auto Sync: OFF, Sync Type: Synchronize)	Chapter 4
	Normal	Ringtone Vol.: Level 3, Ringtone: Pattern 1, Duration: 5 sec, Feeling: ON, Vibration: OFF, Keypad Tone Volume: Level 1, Keypad Tone Type: Original 1, Sound Effects Tone Volume: Level 1, Sound Effects Tone Type: Original, Sound Vol.: Level 3, Earpiece Vol.: Level 5, Speaker Vol.: Level 5, Battery: ON	
Sounds	Manner Mode (Silent)	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Alarms: OFF, Feeling: Same as Phone, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Ans. Phone: Same as Phone	Chapter 11
	Manner Mode (Alarms)	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Alarms (Alarms: Same as Phone, Vibration: Same as Phone), Feeling: Same as Phone, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, OFF, Ans. Phone: Same as Phone	
	Manner Mode (Original 1 to 3)	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Alarms: OFF, Feeling: ON, Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, OFF, Ans. Phone: ON	
Manner Mode		Silent	Page 11-2

Fund	tion Name	Default Setting	Page
	Idle Screen	Wallpaper: Preset, Others: 1-line Digit, Ext. Display: Normal	
	Main Screens	Deco (Icons): Original, Deco (Windows): Original, In-Calls: Original, Messages: Original, Download: Original, Power On: Original, Power Off: Original	
	Caller Details	Picture: ON, Ext. Display: ON	
	Font Settings	Font Size (General: Medium, Messaging: Medium-Small, PC Browser: Extra-Small, Mobile Web: Medium-Small, Text Entry: Medium-Small), Font Color: Pattern 1	
Display	Backlight	Power Saving: 1 min, Keypad Light: ON, Displays (Lighting Time: 15 sec, Brightness: Bright), Media Player: Always ON	Chapter 11
	External Light	Notification (Missed Call: Red, Messages: Green, DeliveryCheck: Blue, Missed Call: Purple, Missed CT: Aqua, Hot Status: Yellow), Incoming (Voice Call: Red, Video Call: Green, Message (Pattern: Blue, Feeling: ON), DeliveryCheck: Purple, Missed Call: Yellow, Circle Talk: Aqua, Hot Status: Yellow)	
	Twinkle Light ^{*1}	Voice Call: Gentle Mix, Video Call: Gentle Mix, Message: Glittering Mix, Delivery: Glittering Mix, Opening: Gradation Mix, Closing: Gradation Mix, In Call: Rhythmic Mix, Side Key: Starlight Mix, Original 1 to 8 (Create Color: 15 (G)/0 (R), Pattern: Teardrop)	

^{*1 815}T Only.

Fun	ction Name	Default Setting	Page
	Clock	12hour/24hour: 24 hour, World Clock (City 1: Tokyo, City 2: Tokyo, Set as Main City: City 1, DST ON/OFF: OFF)	Pages 11-9,13-37, 13-38
Phone	Sub Menu View	Show	Page 11-13
Settings	言語選択	日本語	Daga 11 12
	Navigation Keys	்: Active Window, ♀: Phone Book, ॰ : Dialed Numbers, ॰: Received Calls	- Page 11-12
	Side Key	Manner Mode ^{*2}	Page 11-13
	PIN Settings	_	
	Change PIN	_	Down 12 2
	Change PIN2	_	Page 12-2
	Change Password	9999	
	Password Look	Phone Closed: OFF, Power Saving: OFF, Power Off: OFF	Page 12-3
Security	Function Lock	Phone Book: Unlock, Calendar: Unlock, Tasks: Unlock, Call Log: Unlock, Message Log: Unlock	Page 12-4
	Biometrics	OFF	Page 12-5
	Secret Mode	Hide	Page 12-6
	Restricted Mode	Web: OFF	Page 12-9
	IP Service	ON	Page 12-7

² "Twinkle Light" for the 815T.

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
	Call Services	Intl. Calls (Intl. Code: 0046010)	Page 13-43
	Call Time&Cost	Last Call Time: 000:00:00, Total Call Time: 000:00:00, Last Call Cost:YEN, Total Call Cost: 0YEN, Cost Unit (Unit: YEN, Rate: 1.0000000), Cost Display: OFF, Cost Limit:—	Pages 2-10, 2-11
	Earphone	Auto Answer: OFF, Earphone Call (Earphone Call: OFF, Set Number: Not Registered)	Page 13-47
	Answer Type	Open to Talk: OFF, Any Keys: OFF	Page 11-13
Call Settings	Video Call	Alt. Picture: OFF, Image Quality: Standard, Hold Setting (Hold on Call: Preset, Hold Answer: Preset), Mute: OFF, Loud Speaker: ON, Auto Answer (Auto Answer: OFF, Answer List: Unset), Self-view: ON	Chapter 5
	Reject Calls	Specific #s (Specific #s: OFF, Reject List: No Entry), Unknown: OFF, Withheld: OFF, Payphone: OFF, Unavailable: OFF	Page 11-14
	Offline Mode	OFF	Page 2-12
	Show My Number	OFF	Page 11-15
	External Device	Empty	Page 11-16
Connectivity	Infrared	ON/OFF: OFF	Page 10-3
Connectivity	USB	Confirmation: Display, Battery: ON	Page 10-7
Location		Map URL Settings: NAVITIME (http://map.navitime.jp/), Positioning Lock: OFF, LocationProperty: Always Ask	Page 11-16
Ku-man	Idle Screen	OFF	Page 11-9

Func	tion Name	Default Setting	Page
Priority		Mid-operation (Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue), Video (Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue), Media Player: Pause, Voice Recorder (Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue), S! Appli (Voice Call: Pause Apps, Video Call: Pause Apps, Message: Continue Apps, Alarm: Pause Apps), Circle Talk: Continue	Page 11-15
Memory	Memory Status	_	Page 11-16
wieiliory	Format Card	_	Page 8-4
	Call Forward	_	Page 14-3
	Voice Mail	_	Page 14-5
Call Services	Call Waiting	_	Page 14-6
50.0.00	Multiparty Call	_	Page 14-7
	Call Barring	_	Page 14-8
	Dialed Number	_	
	Received Call	_	
Call Log	Dialed Circle Talk		Pages 2-8, 2-9
	Received Circle Talk	_	
Text Entry		Predict Text: ON, Input Method: Standard, Font Size: Medium-Small, Clipboard: Unset	Chapter 3
Shortcuts		Create Message, Message Box, Main Menu, Media Player, Calendar, Time Table, Calculator, IC Card Lock	Page 13-44
Press and hold ##	Manner Mode	Unset	Page 2-12

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Causes and Remedies
Cannot turn the power on.	• Is the battery pack inserted properly (page 1-13)? • Is the battery charged (page 1-12)?
Displays Please check connection with your charger. and cannot charge the battery.	Is there dust on the connections and contacts of the AC charger, handset or battery pack? Clean the connections and contacts with a dry cotton swab, etc.
Cannot operate the handset normally after turning it on.	 Does the PIN Entry window appear? PIN Settings (page 12-2) is set to ON. Enter your PIN1 code. Does the " " indicator or Password Lock appear on the display? The password lock (page 12-3) is activated. Enter your security code (page 1-22). Does USIM not inserted. Power off the phone and insert USIM. appear on the display? The USIM card was not read properly. Turn the power off and make sure the USIM card is inserted properly (page 1-4).
Cannot establish a connection for voice and video calls or use mail and Web functions.	 Does the "a" indicator appear on the display? Are you out of the service area or in a location where a signal cannot reach your handset? Move to a location where a signal can reach your handset. Is your hand or another object covering the internal antenna part (page 1-7) of your handset? Does the "a" indicator or Offline Mode appear on the display? Cancel offline mode (page 2-12).
Cannot make voice and video calls.	 Did you dial the whole phone number starting from the area code? Does Network busy. appear on the display? Is Call Barring (page 14-8) set?

Problem	Possible Causes and Remedies	
Cannot receive voice and video calls.	 Is Reject Calls (page 11-14) set? Is Call Forward (page 14-3) or Voice Mail (page 14-5) set to <i>All Calls</i>? Is Call Barring (page 14-8) set? 	
Cannot send messages.	• Is Call Barring (page 14-8) set?	
Cannot receive messages.	• Is Call Barring (page 14-8) set?	
Calls are interrupted or disconnected.	 Does the "a indicator appear on the display? Are you out of the service area or in a location where a signal cannot reach your handset? Move to a location where a signal can reach your handset. Is your hand or another object covering the internal antenna part (page 1-7) of your handset? 	
The handset does not respond to key presses.	• Does the " " indicator or <i>Password Lock</i> appear on the display? The phone lock (page 12-3) is activated. Enter your security code (page 1-22).	
Cannot use FeliCa.	• Is "🚱" displayed? Turn off IC Card Lock (page 20-5).	

Updating Software

Check if software on the handset needs to be updated, and update it through the network.

- No communication charge applies to update software.
- There are two ways to update software: *Update now* and *Schedule* update.

Update now: Update software now.

Schedule update: Set a date and time to update software so that software is updated automatically at the time you have specified.

- Software updates may take a long time.
- Update software when the battery is fully charged. Do not remove the battery pack while updating.
- Please update software in a place where the handset has a good reception, and do not change locations while updating.
- You cannot use other functions during updates. If a program is running, software update is not available.
- You can update software without deleting Phone Book entries, images and sounds saved in the handset. However, data may be lost or damaged if the handset is not in good condition (broken, damaged, wet, etc.). We recommend that you make backups of your important data.

Note

• If the software update fails, you may not be able to operate your handset. In this case, contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).

Updating Software

Main Tools Update menu

- Select $YES \rightarrow \blacksquare$
- Select $Agree \rightarrow \blacksquare$ (twice) \rightarrow Enter your center access code (page 1-22)→ □ → □ (OK)

The check result is displayed.

Updating Software Immediately

Select *Update now* \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow Press \blacksquare when the download is completed

A message appears to indicate that the download is completed.

 When software is updated, the handset restarts automatically. After restarting, a confirmation window appears showing update information.



Selecting the Date and Time to Update Software

Select $Schedule\ update \longrightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow \bigcirc (YES) \longrightarrow Select\ a\ date \longrightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow Select\ time \longrightarrow \bigcirc (twice)$

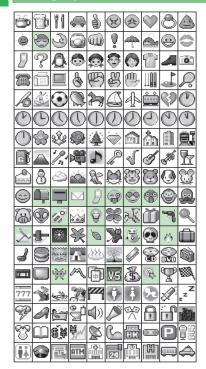
- If a date or time you want to specify is not on the screen, select Next Time Slot or Next Week.
- A confirmation window for software updates appears on the scheduled time.
 Press or leave the handset for about 10 seconds to start automatic software updates.

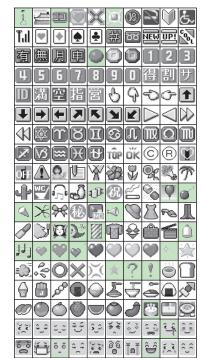


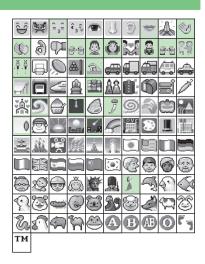
Note

- If you are using another function on the handset on the scheduled time, software is not updated.
- If the handset indicates that it is out of the service area on the scheduled time, software is not updated.

Tip







- Pictographs in \square are animated.
- Pictographs do not appear in email or on incompatible SoftBank handsets.

Arrange-picture List

Following images are preinstalled. Insert images in S! Mail text messages (page 15-7).

キラキラライン	\$*+**
星空	
おめでとう	かめてとう
ありがとう	THANK YOU
ごめんね	ごめんね
好き	(Feb
ぶんぷん	(3n)
つかれた	ಚಿತ್ರಿ

やったー!	*
がんばれ!	类
OK	*
びっくり	Ą
くーまんライン1	\ @\@\@\
くーまんライン2	
くーまんダンス	000500

Melody List

Following melodies are preinstalled (page 9-10).

Melody	Artist/By
O Mio Babbino ···	PUCCINI GIACOMO
Habanera	BIZET GEORGES
Jupiter	HOLST GUSTAV
Arabesque No.1	DEBUSSY CLAUDE ACHILL
Turandot	PUCCINI GIACOMO
Someday My ···	CHURCHILL FRANK E
Entertainer	JOPLIN SCOTT
Aloha Oe	Hawaiian folksong
Old Phone	Toshiba original
Flash News	Toshiba original
ElectronicSound1	Toshiba original
ElectronicSound2	Toshiba original
ElectronicSound3	Toshiba original
ElectronicSound4	Toshiba original
Voice1	Toshiba original
Voice2	Toshiba original
Voice3	Toshiba original
Voice4	Toshiba original
Alarm Clock	Toshiba original
Pigeon	Toshiba original

Storage Capacity

Data Folder

Data Folder	Up to 14 MB*
-------------	--------------

* The S! Appli Library shares its memory with Data Folder. The maximum available capacity is the space available when all the deletable data in Data Folder has been deleted.

Mail

Received	Up to 3.75 MB Up to 1,500 messages
Sent, Unsent	Up to 0.75 MB Up to 300 messages
Drafts	Up to 700 KB Up to 60 messages

Internet

Cache	Up to 300 KB
Bookmarks	Up to 50 bookmarks
History (URL)	Up to 10 URLs

Specifications

	814T	815T
Frequency Range	1920 - 2	170 MHz
Continuous Talk Time	Approx. 160 min. (Video call: Approx. 100 min.)	
Continuous Standby Time	Approx. 420 hrs	
Charging Time	Approx. 120 min.	
Dimensions when closed (W×H×D)	Approx. 50×101×12.9 (thickest portion 14) mm	Approx. 50×102×16 mm
Maximum Output	0.25 W	
Weight	Approx. 97 g (with battery pack)	Approx. 107 g (with battery pack)

- The values above were calculated with the battery pack attached.
- The continuous talk time refers to the average length of time a signal can be received normally when the handset is in a stationary state and a new fully charged battery pack is attached.
- The continuous standby time refers to the average length of time a signal can be received normally when the handset is closed, the handset is in a stationary state, a new fully charged battery pack is attached and there are no calls made/received or operations performed. If the handset is in a location outside the service area or where it is difficult to receive a signal (in a building, vehicle, bag, etc.), this time may be reduced to half or less.

 This time may also be affected by other factors such as the operating environment (battery state, temperature, etc.).
- The operating time of the battery was calculated when a stable signal was received constantly. However, this time may be reduced to half or less if the
 handset is used in a location where the signal is weak or the handset is left in standby mode when it is outside the service area.
 Repeated charging and discharging a battery shortens the operating time.
 - If the operating time becomes too short, purchase a new battery pack.
- If the Mobile Light is used frequently for taking pictures and recording videos or as a flashlight, the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become shorter.
- When an S! Appli is activated, the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become significantly shorter.
- If the handset is used with the Display illuminated frequently (for Yahoo! Keitai use, etc.), the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become shorter.
- Note that the LCD Display may have defective pixels (dead or stuck pixels).

21

AC Charger

Appendix

Input Voltage: 100 to 240 V AC

: 50/60 Hz

Charging Temperature Range: 5 to 35°C

Glossary

Term	Definition
3G	A third generation (3G) mobile communication system.
USIM Card	Use the handset with this card inserted. The card stores subscriber information such as your phone number and handset data. You can also save Contacts list entries and other data to the card. When you replace your handset, use of the same USIM card in the new handset enables you to continue using the data stored on the card.
USIM PIN	A number required for using the USIM card with your handset. This number allows you to prevent others from using your handset in the event that your handset is lost or stolen.
S! Mail	A service that allows long text messages with picture, video and melody attachments to be exchanged.
SMS	A service that allows short text messages to be exchanged between handsets.
SSL	A communication method for transmitting data in an encrypted form over the Internet. It enables data such as information related to privacy and credit card numbers to be sent and received safely and protects against dangers on the Internet such as eavesdropping, tampering and spoofing. SSL communication uses server certificates.
Server Certificate	A digital certificate for identifying that a site on a server is trustworthy. The server certificate includes information necessary for SSL communication (encrypted communication), server information and a digital signature of a Certificate Authority to verify that the server is authentic.
Cache	The location in the handset for temporarily storing the data of displayed Web pages, etc.
S! Appli	Applications including games and 3D images that can be downloaded from the Web pages of S! Appli providers. Some applications connect to the network to obtain information in real time and some applications can be activated as wallpaper.
FeliCa	Contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. It allows data to be exchanged by simply holding an IC card up to a reader device. The 814T/815T handset is capable of managing multiple types of data, so it can be used for such things as e-money and a membership card.

Index

Index

User Action Index

7	а		
ı		ı,	

Accessing	
Internet (PC Websites)	
Internet (Yahoo! Keitai)	16-
Activating	
Barcode reader (QR Code)	6-1
Call Waiting	14-
Music Player	7-1
Adding	
Applications to Balance List	20-
Bookmarks	16-
Country code list	13-4
Folders (Data Folder)	9-1
Hot Status Members List Group	18-1
Music file being played to a playlist	7-
New Event	
Owner information	4-1
Phone numbers to the Auto Answer	
List for video calls	5-
Phone numbers to the Rejection List .	
Shortcut menus	
Stamps	6-2
Text (Edit Picture)	
User dictionary	

Adjusting	
Backlight	11-10
Earpiece Volume during Circle Talk	
session	18-14
Earpiece Volume during voice call	
Speaker Volume during video call	
. 3	5-3
Answering	
Any Key Answer	
Auto Answer (stereo earphone)	
Auto Answer (video calls)	5-5
Call	2-4
Call Waiting	14-6
One-touch	13-47
Open to Talk	
Ringing duration (Answering Machine) .	
Video calls	
Attaching	J-
3	45.0
Image and melody files	15-8
В	
Backing up	
Files	13-39
Function settings	13-42
Restore settings	
S! Address Book	
5. / (ddi C55 D00K	1

Canceling	
Balance Display (FeliCa)	20-8
Data transfer mode	10-7
Keypad Lock	12-7
Manner mode	2-11
Message protect	15-18
Mute	5-3
Offline mode	2-12
Password Lock	12-3
Phone Book Lock	4-13
PIN Lock	12-3
PIN Lock (PUK)	1-5
S! Cast subscription	19-2
Changing	
Alternative image	5-4
Call barring service code	14-9
Colors of dates and days of the week	13-28
Coordinate panels	
Folder/File names	9-13
Font size (browser)	16-12
Image quality (incoming video call)	5-4
International code	13-43
Internet security code	12-9
Message Box list display mode	15-13
My Status	18-7

Order of files9-16 Order of messages......15-19

Order of Phone Book entries4-10	Time tables13-34	Hot Status Members List18-9
Picture size6-22	Creating	Messages15-19
PIN12-2	Circle Talk Members List18-15	Phone Book4-11
Security code12-2	Entry in Circle Talk Members List18-15	Playlists7-6
Text encoding type16-13	Hot Status Members List18-4	Recorded messages 2-6, 13-19
Charging	Original emoticons3-16	S! Appli17-4
AC Charger1-14	Original Twinkle Light11-12	Server messages15-21
In-Car Charger1-14	Playlists7-5	Shortcut icons13-45
Using a USB cable10-7	S! Mail15-5	Tasks13-33
Connecting	SMS15-10	Text3-15
Dial-up Connections (infrared)10-5	vObject9-11	Time tables13-34
Dial-up Connections (USB)10-7	Wallpaper6-25	Transferred backup data13-41
PC10-7	Customizing	Videos6-12
Stereo earphone13-46	Handset address15-2	Downloading
USB10-5	Main menu1-21	Lifestyle-Appli20-4
Converting	Original Manner mode11-3	Lifestyle-Appli (S! FeliCa)20-3
Hiragana to alphanumerics/katakana3-7	•	Music and video files7-7
Phonetic3-6	D	S! Appli17-3
Previously converted text3-15	U	S! Cast19-3
Proper Name3-6	Decorating	Updating software21-12
Coordinate1-15	Text of S! Mail messages15-7	
Copying	Deleting	E
Files9-15	Alarms13-17	E
Folders9-14	Applications from Balance List20-9	Editing
Phone Book4-10	Bookmarks16-7	Bookmarks16-6
Playlists7-6	Circle Talk Members List (Group)18-16	Circle Talk Members List18-16
Text3-13	Circle Talk Members List (Individual)18-17	City names
Text from a page (Web)16-9	Events13-27	Events
Text in a message15-14	Folders/Files (Data Folder)9-13	Files & Folders9-12

Hot Status Members List	18-8
Members List	13-3
Phone Book	
Pictures	6-22
Playlists	7-6
S! Address Book	
Text	3-13
Ending	
S! Appli	17-3
Entering	
Adding "or "	3-5
Alphanumerics	3-8
Beeper mode	3-9
Conversion predictions	3-11
Emoticons	3-8
Kanji/Hiragana/Katakana	3-4
Line Break	3-9
Lower Case (a, ⊃ etc.)	3-5
Mail & Web	3-9
Notepad	13-19
Phrase predictions	3-11
Pictographs	3-8
Space	3-9
Symbols	3-7
F	
•	
Flashing	
Charging Indicator	1-7

Incoming External Light Notification External Light . Twinkle Light	11-11
Formatting	0.4
Memory card	8-4
Forwarding	45.46
Messages	
Server Messages	15-21
H	
Holding Hold Image (Video call) Incoming call	
1	
Initializing Browser	16-16
L	
Locking Biometrics Browser security Calendar Lock Call Log Lock Function Lock Keypad Lock	16-8 13-28 2-10 12-4

Password Lock	12-3
PIN Request	12-2
Remote Lock	20-7
Security for Message Box	15-13
Tasks Lock	13-33
М	
Making	
Calls	2-2
Calls (from Call Log)	2-8
Calls (Multiparty call)	
Calls (voice calls)	2-2, 2-4
Calls from Dialed Number	2-8

Calls from Dialed Number......2-8 International calls2-3 Multiparty Call14-7 Speed Calling4-12 Moving Files9-14 Folders9-13 Phone Book4-10 S! Appli......17-5 SMS15-14 To specified date in Calendar.....13-28

0	
Opening	
Active Window	13-2
Ku-man's Room	19-6
P	
Pasting	
Text	3-13
Playing	
Answering Machine	13-19
Files (Data Folder)	9-4
Music	7-3
Playlists	7-6
Recordings	13-36
Videos (Media Player)	7-3
Videos (Preview)	6-21
Voice Mail	14-6
Protecting	
Messages	15-18
R	
Receiving	
Hot Status notifications	18-3
Infrared	10-3, 10-4
New information (Live Monitor)	13-4
New messages	15-3

Retrieving messages	15-20
Recording	
Answering Machine	2-5, 13-18
Video	6-11
Voice Mail	14-5
Voice Record (during call)	2-7
Voice Recorder	13-35
Registering	
Applications to Balance List	20-8
For S! Cast	19-2
Live Monitor	16-16
My Library playlists	7-8
Shortcut menus	13-44
Task items	13-30
Time tables	13-33
Rejecting	
Calls	2-6
Reception of images or melodies .	16-13
Specific calls	11-14
Releasing	
Remote Lock	20-7
Replying	
To received messages	15-16
Resetting	
Browser settings	16-16
Live Monitor List	16-16
Navigation Key shortcuts	11-12
Prediction dictionary/conversion	
dictionary	3-16

Settings
S
Saving Attached files15-18
Displayed pages to Saved Pages16-5
Draft messages15-11
Hot Status Members List18-5
Hot Status Members List (Saving
Request)
My Locations
Number memos2-7
Phone Book4-2
Picture/melody files in Web pages16-11
User image12-5
Searching
Character string on a page16-9
Phone Book4-9
Sending
A picture during a video call5-3 Infrared10-3

Infrared (All Phone Book information) 10-4

	Music or video files	7-9
	Pictures or videos	6-22
	S! Mail	
	Sending Data	
	SMS	
	Touch tones	13-45
S	etting	
	Alarms	13-16
	Answering Machine off	
	Auto Answer (stereo earphone)	13-47
	Auto Answer (video calls)	5-5
	Biometrics	
	Browser security	16-8
	Calendar Lock	13-28
	Call Forward	14-3
	Call Log Lock	2-10
	Call Waiting	
	Function Lock	12-4
	Hold Image	5-6
	Keypad Lock	12-7
	Open to Talk	11-13
	Password Lock	12-3
	PIN Request	12-2
	Positioning Lock	11-17
	Remote Lock	20-7
	Ringing duration (Answering Machine)	13-19
	Security for Message Box	15-13
	Tasks Lock	
	Word predictions off	3-16

Starting	
S! Appli	17-3
Storing	
Notepad	13-19
Number memos	
Switching	
Background Playback	7-10
Handsfree Operation	
Simple mode	13-8
Text entry mode	3-2
•	
Т	
Taking	
Number memo	
Pictures	6-7
Transferring	
Call Forward	14-3

Mobile Light.....6-6

Turning off

Turning on

Unlocking	
Browser Security	16-8
Calendar Lock	13-28
Call Log Lock	2-10
Function Lock	12-4
Security (Message Folders)	15-15
Security for Message Box	
Updating	
Hot Status Information	18-11
Information (Web)	16-8
Information of an S! Appli on the	
memory card	17-7
Live Monitor	13-4
Server Mail	15-20
Software	21-12
Weather Forecast	19-4

U

Alphanumerical Index

Numeric	
BD Pictogram Display	15-24
Auto Play	15-24
Font, Background Colors	

AC Charger	1-14
Access Functions	1-18
Accessories	
Account Name	
Active Window	13-2
Change Icons	13-3
Contact Members	
Hot Status Information	13-4
Live Monitor	13-4
Members List	13-3
Open	13-2
Settings	13-5
Weather Information	
After Sales Service	21-35
Alarms	
Alarm Tone	13-16
Set	13-16
Snooze	13-17
Stop	
[

Answer Calls	
Answer Video Calls	
Answering Machine	
Delete	2-6, 13-19
Play	2-6, 13-19
Record	2-5, 13-18
Ringing Duration Setting	13-19
Set	13-18
Any Key Answer	11-13
Attached Files	
Attach Files	15-8
Automatic Extraction	15-24
Save Attached Files	15-18
Auto Answer	13-47
Auto-delete Setting	15-15
Automatic Extraction	
Automatic Retrieve	15-24
В	
Backlight	11-10
Adjust Brightness	
Lighting Time	
Battery Alarm	
Battery Level	
Battery Pack	
Insert/Remove	

Biometrics......12-5

Bookmarks	16-6
Add	16-6
Create Folder	16-6
Delete	16-7
Edit	16-7
Move	16-7
Send	16-7
Use	16-6
BookSurfing	19-5
Browser Settings	16-12
Clear All Cookie	16-14
Clear Cache	16-13
Cookie	16-14
Font Size	16-12
Manufacture Number	16-14
Memory Management	16-13
Referer Setting	16-14
Root Certificates	16-15
Scroll Unit	16-12
Text Browse	
Warning Window	16-13

C

ache	16-2
alculator	13-20
Exchange Rate	13-20
Tax Rate	13-20

Calendar	13-21
Add	13-25
Alarm	13-25
Calendar Lock	13-28
Delete	13-27
Edit	13-27
Holiday Setting	13-28
Stop Alarm	13-28
Call Barring	
Call Barring Service Code	1-22, 14-9
Call Costs	2-10
Cost Limit Setting	2-11
Currency Setting	
Call Forward	14-3
Call Log	2-8
Call Time	2-10
Call Waiting	14-6
Caller Details Display	11-8
Caller ID	
Caller ID Setting	11-15
Camera	
Add to Phone Book	6-12
Auto Focus	
Auto Save	
Brush Up mode	6-9
Camera Mode	6-6, 6-9
Color Control	
Date Stamp	6-16
Delay Timer	6-18

Digital Camera	6-6, 6-
Edit Pictures	6-2
Effects	6-1
Encode	6-1
Exposure Control	6-
File Name Setting	6-2
Finder Window	
Frame	6-10, 6-2
Full Screen Display	6-1
Grid	
cons Display	6-1
ndicators	6-
Key Guide Display	6-
Key Shortcut	6-2
Mobile Camera	6-6, 6-
Mobile Light	6-
Multi Shots	6-
Mute	6-2
Night mode	6-1
Picture Quality	6-1
Picture Size	6-15, 6-2
Pictures	6-
Preview Setting	6-1
Preview Window	6-
Self-view mode	6-
Send Functions	6-2
Short Video	6-11, 6-1
Shutter Sound	6-1
Start & End Sounds	6-1

Storage Place Setting	6-18
Take Picture for Phone Book E	ntry6-8
Take/Record	6-7, 6-11
Video Camera	6-11, 6-13
Video Mail	
Video Modes	6-11, 6-13
Video Quality	6-17
Videos	6-10
Voice Record	6-13
White Balance	6-19
Zoom	6-5
Center Access Code	1-22
Certificates	16-15
Change Email Address	15-2
Charger	1-12
Charging	1-12
AC Charger	1-14
In-Car Charger	1-14
Charging Time	1-14
Circle Talk	18-12
Answer Circle Talk Calls	18-14
Create an Entry	18-15
Delete Members	18-17
Dialed Numbers	2-8
Earpiece Volume	18-14
Edit Group	18-16
Edit Group Name	
Make Circle Talk Calls	18-13
Members List	18-15

Received Calls	2-9
Switch Sound Output	18-14
Clear Memory	12-8
Clock Display	11-7
Switch 12hour/24hour Clock	11-9
Wallpaper & Clock Setting	11-7
Codes	1-22
Call Barring Service Code	1-22
Center Access Code	1-22
Internet Security Code	1-22
Security Code	1-22
Communications	18-2
Hot Status	18-3
S! Loop	18-2
S! Town	18-2
Continuous Standby Time	21-17
Continuous Standby Time Continuous Talk Time	
	21-17
Continuous Talk Time	21-17 13-20
Converter	21-17 13-20
Converter	21-17 13-20 1-15
Continuous Talk Time Converter Coordinate Panels Create/Send Messages	21-17 13-20 1-15
Continuous Talk Time	21-17 13-20 1-15 15-8
Continuous Talk Time	21-17 13-20 1-15 15-8 15-7
Continuous Talk Time	21-17 13-20 1-15 15-8 15-7 15-7
Continuous Talk Time	21-17 13-20 1-15 15-7 15-7 15-8 15-9, 15-11
Continuous Talk Time Converter Coordinate Panels Create/Send Messages Attach Files Decorate Font Size Mail Template Options	21-17 13-20 1-15 15-7 15-7 15-8 15-9, 15-11
Continuous Talk Time Converter Coordinate Panels Create/Send Messages Attach Files Decorate Font Size Mail Template Options Recipient	21-17 13-20 1-15 15-7 15-7 15-8 15-9, 15-11 15-6
Continuous Talk Time Converter Coordinate Panels Create/Send Messages Attach Files Decorate Font Size Mail Template Options Recipient Signature	21-1713-2015-815-715-815-9, 15-1115-615-23

To/Cc/Bcc	15-
Cursor	1-2
Customer Service	21-3
Customize Main Menu	1-2

D	
ata Folder	9-2
ata Management	
Book Files	9-6
Change Folder/File Name	9-13
Change Order	9-16
Copy	9-15
Delete	9-13
Edit Files/Folders	9-12
File Properties	9-9
Files for Gamendeco	9-8
Flash® Files	9-7
Lifestyle-Appli	9-3
List View	
Main Menu/Image Files	9-8
Melody Files	9-5, 9-10
Memory Status	9-9
Move	9-14
Music Files	9-6, 9-10
Open	9-4
Picture Files	9-4, 9-10
S! Appli	9-2
Slide Show	9-16

	9-2
Templates	
Text Files	
Thumbnail View	
Video Files	,
vObjects	
Date & Time	
Default Settings	21-2
Delete Messages	
Auto-delete Setting	
Delete All Messages	
Delete Multiple Messages	
Delete One Message	15-19
Delivery Check	
Delivery Report	15-17
Delivery Time	
Delivery Time Dialed Numbers	
	2-8
Dialed Numbers	2-8 10-5, 10-7
Dialed Numbers Dial-up Connections Dictionary	2-8 10-5, 10-7 13-20
Dialed Numbers	2-8 10-5, 10-7 13-20 1-8
Dialed Numbers Dial-up Connections Dictionary	2-8 10-5, 10-7 13-20 1-8 11-10
Dialed Numbers	2-8 10-5, 10-7 13-20 1-8 11-10 .7-7, 9-4, 17-3
Dialed Numbers	2-8 10-5, 10-7 13-20 1-18 11-10 .7-7, 9-4, 17-3
Dialed Numbers	2-8 10-5, 10-7 13-20 11-10 .7-7, 9-4, 17-3 15-11

Earpiece Volume 2-7, 5-3,	11-5, 18-14
Earphone-microphone	13-46
Auto Answer	13-47
One-touch Answering	13-47
One-touch Calling	
Set Phone Number	
Edit Pictures	6-22
Add Frame	6-23
Add Stamp	6-24
Add Text	6-24
Change Picture Size	6-22
Create Wallpaper	
Overlay	6-25
Rotate	6-25
Edit Text	
Clipboard	
Convert All	
Copy/Cut/Paste	3-13
Delete	
Edit	3-13
Font Size	
Input Method	3-16
Insert	
Quote Information	3-14
Quote Information Replace Text	
Replace Text	3-15
	3-15 3-16

Save to Phone Book	3-14
Select Range	3-14
Undo	
Word Predictions	3-16
moticons	
nter Characters	3-4
Address Library	3-9
Alphanumerics	3-8
Beeper Mode	
Convert Names	
Convert to Alphanumerics/Katakana	3-7
Convert to Kanji	3-4
Custom Window	3-16
Dakuten and Handakuten	3-5
Display in Opposite Order	3-7
Emoticons	3-8
Kanji/Hiragana/Katakana	3-4
Line Break	3-9
Lower Case	3-5
Phonetic Conversion	3-6
Pictographs	3-8
Space	3-9
Special Characters	3-6
Symbols	
xternal Device Settings	
xternal Display	1-10
xternal Light	
Notification	
Set Incoming External Light	11-11

F	
FeliCa	20-2
Folder Management	
Add	9-12
Delete	9-13
Folder Security	9-15
Rename	9-13
Font Size	11-9
Browser	16-12
SMS/S! Mail	15-22
Text Entry Window	3-16
Forward Message	15-16
G	
Glossary	21-19
Н	
Handsfree Operation	2-7
Hot Status	
Hot Status Members List	
Member Status Window	
My Status	18-7

Settings......18-10

_	
IC Card	
IC Card Lock	
In-Car Charger	1-14
Indicators	
Camera	6-3
Dialed Numbers	2-8
Display	1-8
Hot Status	18-5, 18-11
Media Player	7-2
Message	15-12
Received Calls	
Text Entry	3-2
Video	
Video Call	5-2
Information Prompt	
Infrared Communication	
Authentication Password	
Dial-up Connections	
Receiving All	
Receiving Data	
Sending All	
Sending Data	
International Call Service	
Add International Code and Count	
Add to Country Code List	
Change International Code	
Change international Code	13-43

Linked Information	Internet	16-2
PC Website Browser	Linked Information	16-9
Internet Security Code		
K K K K K K K K K K	View/Use Websites	16-3
K K K K K K K K K K	Internet Security Code	1-22
Key Assignment 3-3 Key Setting 11-12 Navigation Keys 11-12 Side Key 11-13 Keypad Lock 12-7 Kitchen Timer 13-35 Ku-man's Room 19-5 Check Messages 19-8 Open 19-6 Play 19-7 Set for Standby 11-9 L Language 11-12 License Information 17-8 Lifestyle-Appli 20-2 Add Lifestyle-Appli 20-2		
Key Assignment 3-3 Key Setting 11-12 Navigation Keys 11-12 Side Key 11-13 Keypad Lock 12-7 Kitchen Timer 13-35 Ku-man's Room 19-5 Check Messages 19-8 Open 19-6 Play 19-7 Set for Standby 11-9 L Language 11-12 License Information 17-8 Lifestyle-Appli 20-2 Add Lifestyle-Appli 20-2		
Key Setting 11-12 Navigation Keys 11-12 Side Key 11-13 Keypad Lock 12-7 Kitchen Timer 13-35 Ku-man's Room 19-5 Check Messages 19-8 Open 19-6 Play 19-7 Set for Standby 11-9 L L Language 11-12 License Information 17-8 Lifestyle-Appli 20-2 Add Lifestyle-Appli 20-4	K	
Key Setting 11-12 Navigation Keys 11-12 Side Key 11-13 Keypad Lock 12-7 Kitchen Timer 13-35 Ku-man's Room 19-5 Check Messages 19-8 Open 19-6 Play 19-7 Set for Standby 11-9 L L Language 11-12 License Information 17-8 Lifestyle-Appli 20-2 Add Lifestyle-Appli 20-4	Var. Assimumant	2.2
Navigation Keys. 11-12 Side Key 11-13 Keypad Lock 12-7 Kitchen Timer 13-35 Ku-man's Room 19-5 Check Messages 19-8 Open 19-6 Play 19-7 Set for Standby 11-9 L L Language 11-12 License Information 17-8 Lifestyle-Appli 20-2 Add Lifestyle-Appli 20-4		
Side Key 11-13 Keypad Lock 12-7 Kitchen Timer 13-35 Ku-man's Room 19-5 Check Messages 19-8 Open 19-6 Play 19-7 Set for Standby 11-9 L L Language 11-12 License Information 17-8 Lifestyle-Appli 20-2 Add Lifestyle-Appli 20-4		
Keypad Lock 12-7 Kitchen Timer 13-35 Ku-man's Room 19-5 Check Messages 19-8 Open 19-6 Play 19-7 Set for Standby 11-9 L L Language 11-12 License Information 17-8 Lifestyle-Appli 20-2 Add Lifestyle-Appli 20-4		
Kitchen Timer 13-35 Ku-man's Room 19-5 Check Messages 19-8 Open 19-6 Play 19-7 Set for Standby 11-9 L L Language 11-12 License Information 17-8 Lifestyle-Appli 20-2 Add Lifestyle-Appli 20-2		
Ku-man's Room 19-5 Check Messages 19-8 Open 19-6 Play 19-7 Set for Standby 11-9 L L Language 11-12 License Information 17-8 Lifestyle-Appli 20-2 Add Lifestyle-Appli 20-4		
Check Messages 19-8 Open 19-6 Play 19-7 Set for Standby 11-9 L L Language 11-12 License Information 17-8 Lifestyle-Appli 20-2 Add Lifestyle-Appli 20-4		
Open		
Play	3	
L Language		
L Language	•	
Language	section standay	
License Information 17-8 Lifestyle-Appli 20-2 Add Lifestyle-Appli 20-4	L	
License Information 17-8 Lifestyle-Appli 20-2 Add Lifestyle-Appli 20-4	Language	11 12
Lifestyle-Appli 20-2 Add Lifestyle-Appli 20-4		
Add Lifestyle-Appli20-4		
, , , ,		
Use Lifestyle-Appli20-3	, ,,	

Mail Box Volume	15-22
Mail List	15-20
Delete	15-21
Retrieve/Update	15-20
Mail Template	15-8
Mail Type	15-23
Main Menu	1-18
Make Calls	2-2
Make International Calls	2-3
Make Video Calls	5-2
Manner Mode	2-11, 11-2
Manner Mode Settings	11-2
Alarms	
Original	11-2, 11-3
Silent	11-2
Manufacture Number Setting	16-14
Media Player	7-2
Background Playback	7-10
Change Jacket	7-3
Delete	7-6
Download	7-7
Equalizer	7-9
Full Screen	7-3
Hide Icons	7-3
Music Player	7-10
Mute	7-3
Plav	7-3

M

Play Modes	7-8
Playlists	
Priority	
Recent	
Search Time	
Send	
Streaming	
Surround	
View Property	
Voice Cancel	
Melody List	
Memory Card	
Backup	
File Management	
Format (Initialize)	
Insert/Remove	
Memory Status	
Memory Management	
Clear Authentication	
Clear Cache	16-13
Clear Cookie	
Cookie	16-14
Memory Status	
Message Box	
Change Order	
Drafts	15-12
Manage Folders	15-15
Received	
Rename Folder	15-15

Sent	15-12
Switch Unread/Read	15-20
Unsent	15-12
Wessage List Window	15-12
Message Settings	15-22
3D Pictograms	15-24
Creating Settings	15-22
Display Settings	15-22
Receive Settings	
Send Settings	15-23
Messaging	15-2
MobileRUPO	3-10
Multiparty Call	
 Multiple Connections	
Vlusic Player	
Vlute	
My Details	
,	
N	
Navigation Key	
Network Settings	11-16
New Messages	15-3
Notepad	13-19
Number Memo	2-7
View Number Memo	13-36

Offline Mode	
Open to Talk	
Operations for Web Pages	
Access by Entering URL	
Change Text Encoding Type	16-13
Change View	16-8
Playing Flash®	16-10
Save to Event	16-9
Save to My Locations	16-10
Send URLs via Messages	16-9
Server Certificates	
Sound Volume	16-13
Text Copy	16-9
Update	
Use Files	
View Property	16-10
Operations While Viewing Messages	
Move	
Text Copy	
Optional Accessories	ii
Optional Services	
Original Manner Mode1	
Owner Information	

0

Parts & Functions	
Password Lock	
Pause PC Website Browser	•
Phone Book	
Call Log	
Change View	
Copy/Move	
Delete	
Edit	
External Light	
Group Setting	
Location Information	4-5, 4-12
Memory Status	4-6
Owner Information	4-11
Picture	4-3
Prohibit	4-13
Ringtone Pattern	4-4
Ringtone Volume	
S! Address Book	
Save	
Search Modes	
Secret Setting	
Select Storage	
Setting Groups	
Sort	
Speed Calling	
speca cannig	

P

Vibration	4
vObjects	9-1
Pictographs	
Pictograph List	21-1
PINs	
Change	12-
PIN Lock	1-5, 12-
PIN2	1-5, 12-
PUK Codes	1-5, 12-
PUK/PUK2	1-5, 12-
Set	12-
USIM Lock	1-5, 12-
Playlists	7-!
Create	7-
Delete	7-
Edit	
Play	
Power On/Off	1-1
Predictions	
Conversion Prediction	3-1
Phrase Prediction	
Word Predictions	3-10, 3-1
Priority	
Priority Setting	11-1
Protect Messages	15-1

Check	6-14
Scan	6-14
_	
R	
Receive Messages	
•	45.0
Check New Messages	
Check Received Messages	15-4
Forward Server Messages	15-5, 15-21
Retrieve Mail	15-4
Received Calls	
Received Messages	2 3
•	45.40
Add to Phone Book	
Attached Files	15-18
Auto-delete	15-15
Change Order	15-19
Display	
Edit Folder Name	15-15
Forward	15-16
Move	15-20
Protect	15-18

Q

QR Code.....6-13, 6-14

11-14
11-14
11-14
13, 15-15
12-8
12-8
12-8
12-8
17, 11-16
11-5
11-4
11-4
16-15

S

S! Address Book	4-13	
S! Appli	17-2	
Delete		
Download	17-3	
End	17-3	
License Information	17-8	
Move	17-5	
Network S! Appli	17-2	
Property	17-4	
Resume	17-3	
Route Certificate	17-8	
S! Appli Library Display	17-4	
Security Settings	17-5	

Start	17-3
Suspend	17-3
S! Appli Library	
5! Appli Screensaver	
S! Appli Settings	
Backlight	17-7
Memory Card Sync	17-7
Priority	17-6
Screensaver	17-2, 17-6
Vibration	17-7
Volume	17-7
S! Cast	19-2
Check	19-2, 19-3
Delete	19-2, 19-3
Download Manually	19-3
Get Latest	19-3
History	19-3
Latest Information	19-2
New S! Cast	19-2
S! Cast Information	19-3
Subscribe/Cancel Subscription	19-2
S! FeliCa	20-2
Edy	20-2
FeliCa	20-2
IC Card	20-2
IC Card Lock	20-5
IC Card Status	20-4
Interface	20-8
Lifestyle	20-2

Remote Lock	20-6
i! Loop	18-2
5! Mail	15-2
Create/Send	15-5
Decorate Text	15-7
Retrieve	
! Mail Notification	15-4, 15-21
5! Mail Settings	15-22
Auto-extract	15-24
Delivery Check	15-23
Delivery Time	15-23
Expiry Time	15-23
Group Setting	15-22
Mail Type	15-23
Priority	15-23
Retrieve Mode	15-24
Show Address	15-22
Signature	15-23
Simple Input	15-22
Spam Filtering	15-24
5! Town	18-2
Saved Pages	16-5
ecret Mode	12-6
ecret Setting	4-4
Security Code	
elect Linked Informatio	
end Settings	
Confirmation Window	
Delivery Check	15-23

Mail List Retrieve	
Forward	
Delete	
Server Mail Box Status Server Message	
Retrieve	
Delete Server Messages	
Server Mail Box	15.24
Server Certificates	16-11
Sort Setting	
Rename Folder	
Display	
Delete	
Change Order	15-19
Auto-delete Setting	15-15
Sent Messages	
Vibration	
Reply Address	
Priority	
Delivery Time Expiry Time	
	15-73

Signature	
Save	15-2
Simple mode	13-
SMS	15-
Create/Send	15-1
Retrieve	15-
SMS Settings	
Delivery Check	15-2
Expiry Time	
Font Size	
Mail Type	
Scroll Unit	
Signature	
Soft Keys	
Sound Effects	
Sound Effects Volume	
Sound Volume	
Speaker Volume	
Specifications	
Speed Calling	
SSL/TLS	16-
Storage Capacity	
Strap Eyelet	
Sub Menu View	
Switch Callers	14-
Switch Callers Switch Unread/Read	

Tasks	13-30
Add	13-30
Alarm	13-30
Delete	13-33
Open	13-32
Tasks Lock	13-33
Text Browse	16-13
Text Conversion Functions	3-10
Conversion Prediction	
Phrase Prediction	3-11
User Dictionary	
Word Predictions	
Text Copy	
Text Entry	
Input Mode Icons	
Text Entry Modes	
lcons	
Key Assignment	
Switch	
Time Table	
Copy	
Delete	
Register	
Starting/Ending Time Setting	
Touch Tones	
Troubleshooting	
Twinkle Light	

T

Unsent Message Box	15-12
Unsent Messages	15-18
Display	15-12
Edit/Send	15-18
Update Software	21-12
USB	
Cancel Data Transfer Mode	10-7
Charging	
Dial-up Connections	10-7
Set Data Transfer Mode	10-6
Transfer Data	10-6
Use Files	16-11
File Property	
Play	16-11, 16-12
Save	16-11, 16-12
User Dictionary	3-12
Edit	
Save	
USIM Card	1-3
Insert/Remove	1-4
V	
Vibration	11.5
Video Calls	
Auto Answer	
Caller Details	

U

Hold Image	5-6
Image Quality	5-4, 5-5
Incoming Call Image	
Loud Speaker	
Mute	
Picture View	11-9
Self-view	
Send Picture	5-5
Speaker	5-6
Speaker Volume	
Switch Display	
Zoom	
Voice Recorder	13-35
During a call	2-7
Play	
Record	
Select Storage	13-36
Voice Mail	
W	
W	
Wallpaper	11-6
Warranty	
Weather Indicator	19-4
Check	19-4
Update	19-4
View Settings	19-4
World Clock	13-37

Daylight Saving Time13-37

Display	13-38
GMT Offset	
Setting	13-37
Switch Main City	13-38
Υ	

Yahoo!	Keitai	 16-2

Warranty & After Sales Service

Warranty

A warranty card is included with the handset. Carefully read the card and check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled in correctly. Then, store it in a safe place.

Note

 SoftBank and Toshiba assume no responsibility for damages to you or third parties as a result of a failure, malfunction or faulty operation of the product.

After Sales Service

Be sure to refer to "Troubleshooting" (page 21-10) before submitting your handset for repair. If you are still having problems with your handset, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).

Repair within warranty period

Repair is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.

Repair after warranty period

Repair is carried out if possible and the handset owner is responsible for any repair costs.

* During repair, parts may be replaced with used parts that meet our quality standards.

Note

- Data and settings may be lost or altered as a result of failure or repair
 of your handset. It is, therefore, recommended that you keep a backup
 copy of important data such as Phone Book data. SoftBank and Toshiba
 assume no responsibility for any damages due to the loss or alteration
 of handset data (contents of Phone Book, Data Folder, etc.) and settings
 as a result of failure or repair of your handset.
- Disassembling or modifying the handset is in violation of Radio Law.
 Your handset will not be accepted for repairs if it has been modified.

Tip

 If you have any inquiries with regards to the after sales service, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 21-36).

Customer Service

If you have any questions about a SoftBank handset or service, please call General Information. For service or handset repairs, please call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Centers

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial
+81-3-5351-3491 (Please take care to dial the correct number.
International charges will apply to this call.)

Call These Numbers Toll Free from Fixed-Line Phones

Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba,	General Information	(a) 0088-240-157
Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	Customer Assistance	(0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	6 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	© 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	(a) 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	© 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka,	General Information	(a) 0088-250-157
Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	Customer Assistance	© 0088-250-113

SoftBank 814T/815T Instruction Manual

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

* For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 814T SoftBank 815T

Manufacturer: TOSHIBA CORPORATION



Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands).

^{*} Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.

^{*} Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.